

# Formalizing Statecharts using Hierarchical Automata

Steffen Helke and Florian Kammüller

March 19, 2025

## Abstract

We formalize in Isabelle/HOL the abstract syntax and a synchronous step semantics for the specification language Statecharts [HN96]. The formalization is based on Hierarchical Automata [MLS97] which allow a structural decomposition of Statecharts into Sequential Automata. To support the composition of Statecharts, we introduce calculating operators to construct a Hierarchical Automaton in a stepwise manner [HK01]. Furthermore, we present a complete semantics of Statecharts including a theory of data spaces, which enables the modelling of racing effects [HK05]. We also adapt CTL for Statecharts to build a bridge for future combinations with model checking. However the main motivation of this work is to provide a sound and complete basis for reasoning on Statecharts. As a central meta theorem we prove that the well-formedness of a Statechart is preserved by the semantics [Hel07].

## Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Contributions to the Standard Library of HOL</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	Basic definitions and lemmas . . . . .	1
1.1.1	Maps . . . . .	1
1.1.2	<i>rtrancl</i> . . . . .	2
1.1.3	<i>finite</i> . . . . .	4
1.1.4	<i>override</i> . . . . .	4
1.1.5	<i>Part</i> . . . . .	5
1.1.6	Set operators . . . . .	6
1.1.7	One point rule . . . . .	7
<b>2</b>	<b>Partitioned Data Spaces for Statecharts</b>	<b>8</b>
2.1	Definitions . . . . .	8
2.2	Lemmas . . . . .	8
2.2.1	<i>DataSpace</i> . . . . .	8
2.2.2	<i>PartNum</i> . . . . .	9

<b>3</b>	<b>Data Space Assignments</b>	<b>10</b>
3.1	Total data space assignments . . . . .	10
3.2	Partial data space assignments . . . . .	12
3.2.1	<i>DefaultPData</i> . . . . .	14
3.2.2	<i>Data2PData</i> . . . . .	14
3.2.3	<i>DataOverride</i> . . . . .	16
3.2.4	<i>OptionOverride</i> . . . . .	17
<b>4</b>	<b>Update-Functions on Data Spaces</b>	<b>17</b>
4.1	Total update-functions . . . . .	17
4.1.1	Basic lemmas . . . . .	18
4.1.2	<i>DefaultUpdate</i> . . . . .	18
4.2	Partial update-functions . . . . .	19
4.2.1	Basic lemmas . . . . .	19
4.2.2	<i>Data2PData</i> . . . . .	19
4.2.3	<i>PUpdate</i> . . . . .	20
4.2.4	<i>SequentialRacing</i> . . . . .	20
<b>5</b>	<b>Label Expressions</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Sequential Automata</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Syntax of Hierarchical Automata</b>	<b>29</b>
7.1	Definitions . . . . .	30
7.1.1	Well-formedness for the syntax of HA . . . . .	31
7.1.2	State successor function . . . . .	32
7.1.3	Configurations . . . . .	33
7.2	Lemmas . . . . .	33
7.2.1	<i>HASates</i> . . . . .	34
7.2.2	<i>HAEvents</i> . . . . .	34
7.2.3	<i>NoCycles</i> . . . . .	35
7.2.4	<i>OneAncestor</i> . . . . .	35
7.2.5	<i>MutuallyDistinct</i> . . . . .	35
7.2.6	<i>RootEx</i> . . . . .	36
7.2.7	<i>HARoot</i> . . . . .	37
7.2.8	<i>CompFun</i> . . . . .	38
7.2.9	<i>SAs</i> . . . . .	40
7.2.10	<i>HAInitState</i> . . . . .	40
7.2.11	<i>Chi</i> . . . . .	42
7.2.12	<i>ChiRel</i> . . . . .	45
7.2.13	<i>ChiPlus</i> . . . . .	50
7.2.14	<i>ChiStar</i> . . . . .	58
7.2.15	<i>InitConf</i> . . . . .	59
7.2.16	<i>StepConf</i> . . . . .	62

<b>8</b>	<b>Semantics of Hierarchical Automata</b>	<b>63</b>
8.1	Definitions . . . . .	63
8.1.1	<i>Status</i> . . . . .	63
8.2	Lemmas . . . . .	67
8.2.1	<i>IsConfSet</i> . . . . .	68
8.2.2	<i>InitStatus</i> . . . . .	68
8.2.3	<i>Events</i> . . . . .	69
8.2.4	<i>StepStatus</i> . . . . .	70
8.2.5	Enabled Transitions <i>ET</i> . . . . .	70
8.2.6	Finite Transition Set . . . . .	70
8.2.7	<i>PUpdate</i> . . . . .	71
8.2.8	Higher Priority Transitions <i>HPT</i> . . . . .	71
8.2.9	Delta Transition Set . . . . .	72
8.2.10	Target Transition Set . . . . .	74
8.2.11	Source Transition Set . . . . .	74
8.2.12	<i>StepActEvents</i> . . . . .	77
8.2.13	<i>UniqueSucStates</i> . . . . .	77
8.2.14	<i>RootState</i> . . . . .	77
8.2.15	Configuration <i>Conf</i> . . . . .	80
8.2.16	<i>RootExSem</i> . . . . .	85
8.2.17	<i>StepConf</i> . . . . .	86
8.2.18	<i>StepStatus</i> . . . . .	90
8.3	Meta Theorem: Preservation for Statecharts . . . . .	96
<b>9</b>	<b>Kripke Structures and CTL</b>	<b>96</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>Kripke Structures as Hierarchical Automata</b>	<b>98</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>Constructing Hierarchical Automata</b>	<b>101</b>
11.1	Constructing a Composition Function for a PseudoHA . . . . .	102
11.2	Extending a Composition Function by a SA . . . . .	103
11.3	Constructing a PseudoHA . . . . .	110
11.4	Extending a HA by a SA ( <i>AddSA</i> ) . . . . .	112
11.5	Theorems for Calculating Wellformedness of HA . . . . .	121
<b>12</b>	<b>Example Specification for a Car Audio System</b>	<b>124</b>
12.1	Definitions . . . . .	124
12.1.1	Data space for two Integer-Variables . . . . .	124
12.1.2	Sequential Automaton <i>Root-CTRL</i> . . . . .	125
12.1.3	Sequential Automaton <i>CDPlayer-CTRL</i> . . . . .	126
12.1.4	Sequential Automaton <i>AudioPlayer-CTRL</i> . . . . .	127
12.1.5	Sequential Automaton <i>On-CTRL</i> . . . . .	127
12.1.6	Sequential Automaton <i>TunerMode-CTRL</i> . . . . .	128
12.1.7	Sequential Automaton <i>CDMode-CTRL</i> . . . . .	129

12.1.8 Hierarchical Automaton <i>CarAudioSystem</i> . . . . .	130
12.2 Lemmas . . . . .	130
12.2.1 Sequential Automaton <i>CDMode-CTRL</i> . . . . .	130
12.2.2 Sequential Automaton <i>CDPlayer-CTRL</i> . . . . .	131
12.2.3 Sequential Automaton <i>AudioPlayer-CTRL</i> . . . . .	132
12.2.4 Sequential Automaton <i>On-CTRL</i> . . . . .	133
12.2.5 Sequential Automaton <i>TunerMode-CTRL</i> . . . . .	134
12.2.6 Sequential Automaton <i>CDMode-CTRL</i> . . . . .	135
12.2.7 Hierarchical Automaton <i>CarAudioSystem</i> . . . . .	136

# 1 Contributions to the Standard Library of HOL

```
theory Contrib
imports Main HOL-Library.FuncSet
begin
```

## 1.1 Basic definitions and lemmas

### 1.1.1 Maps

```
definition chg-map :: ('b => 'b) => 'a => ('a -> 'b) => ('a -> 'b) where
  chg-map f a m = (case m a of None => m | Some b => m(a|->f b))
```

```
lemma map-some-list [simp]:
  map the (map Some L) = L
apply (induct-tac L)
apply auto
done
```

```
lemma dom-ran-the:
  [ ran G = {y}; x ∈ (dom G) ] ==> (the (G x)) = y
apply (unfold ran-def dom-def)
apply auto
done
```

```
lemma dom-None:
  (S ∉ dom F) ==> (F S = None)
by (unfold dom-def, auto)
```

```
lemma ran-dom-the:
  [ y ∉ Union (ran G); x ∈ dom G ] ==> y ∉ the (G x)
by (unfold ran-def dom-def, auto)
```

```
lemma dom-map-upd: dom(m(a|->b)) = insert a (dom m)
apply auto
done
```

### 1.1.2 rtrancl

**lemma** *rtrancl-Int*:

$\llbracket (a,b) \in A; (a,b) \in B \rrbracket \implies (a,b) \in (A \cap B)^{\hat{*}}$   
**by** *auto*

**lemma** *rtrancl-mem-Sigma*:

$\llbracket a \neq b; (a,b) \in (A \times A)^{\hat{*}} \rrbracket \implies b \in A$   
**apply** (*frule rtranclD*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac r=A  $\times$  A and A=A in trancl-subset-Sigma*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *help-rtrancl-Range*:

$\llbracket a \neq b; (a,b) \in R^{\hat{*}} \rrbracket \implies b \in \text{Range } R$   
**apply** (*erule rtranclE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *rtrancl-Int-help*:

$(a,b) \in (A \cap B)^{\hat{*}} \implies (a,b) \in A^{\hat{*}} \wedge (a,b) \in B^{\hat{*}}$   
**apply** (*unfold Int-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rule-tac b=b in rtrancl-induct*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rule-tac b=b in rtrancl-induct*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemmas** *rtrancl-Int1* = *rtrancl-Int-help* [*THEN conjunct1*]

**lemmas** *rtrancl-Int2* = *rtrancl-Int-help* [*THEN conjunct2*]

**lemma** *tranclD3* [*rule-format*]:

$(S,T) \in R^{\hat{+}} \implies (S,T) \notin R \longrightarrow (\exists U. (S,U) \in R \wedge (U,T) \in R^{\hat{+}})$   
**apply** (*rule-tac a=S and b=T and r=R in trancl-induct*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *tranclD4* [*rule-format*]:

$(S,T) \in R^{\hat{+}} \implies (S,T) \notin R \longrightarrow (\exists U. (S,U) \in R^{\hat{+}} \wedge (U,T) \in R)$   
**apply** (*rule-tac a=S and b=T and r=R in trancl-induct*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *trancl-collect* [*rule-format*]:

$\llbracket (x,y) \in R^{\hat{*}}; S \notin \text{Domain } R \rrbracket \implies y \neq S \longrightarrow (x,y) \in \{p. \text{fst } p \neq S \wedge \text{snd } p \neq S \wedge p \in R\}^{\hat{*}}$   
**apply** (*rule-tac b=y in rtrancl-induct*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rule rtrancl-into-rtrancl*)

**apply** *fast*  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *trancl-subseteq*:  
 $\llbracket R \subseteq Q; S \in R^{\widehat{*}} \rrbracket \implies S \in Q^{\widehat{*}}$   
**apply** (*frule rtrancl-mono*)  
**apply** *fast*  
**done**

**lemma** *trancl-Int-subset*:  
 $(R \cap (A \times A))^+ \subseteq R^+ \cap (A \times A)$   
**apply** (*rule subsetI*)  
**apply** (*rename-tac S*)  
**apply** (*case-tac S*)  
**apply** (*rename-tac T V*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rule-tac a=T and b=V and r=(R \cap A \times A) in converse-trancl-induct,*  
*auto*)  
**done**

**lemma** *trancl-Int-mem*:  
 $(S, T) \in (R \cap (A \times A))^+ \implies (S, T) \in R^+ \cap A \times A$   
**by** (*rule trancl-Int-subset [THEN subsetD], assumption*)

**lemma** *Int-expand*:  
 $\{(S, S'). P S S' \wedge Q S S'\} = (\{(S, S'). P S S'\} \cap \{(S, S'). Q S S'\})$   
**by** *auto*

### 1.1.3 *finite*

**lemma** *finite-conj*:  
 $finite (\{(S, S'). P S S'\} :: (('a * 'b) set)) \longrightarrow$   
 $finite \{(S, S'). P (S :: 'a) (S' :: 'b) \wedge Q (S :: 'a) (S' :: 'b)\}$   
**apply** (*rule impI*)  
**apply** (*subst Int-expand*)  
**apply** (*rule finite-Int*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *finite-conj2*:  
 $\llbracket finite A; finite B \rrbracket \implies finite (\{(S, S'). S : A \wedge S' : B\})$   
**by** *auto*

### 1.1.4 *override*

**lemma** *dom-override-the*:  
 $(x \in (dom G2)) \longrightarrow ((G1 ++ G2) x) = (G2 x)$   
**by** (*auto*)

**lemma** *dom-override-the2* [*simp*]:  
 $\llbracket \text{dom } G1 \cap \text{dom } G2 = \{\}; x \in (\text{dom } G1) \rrbracket \implies ((G1 ++ G2) x) = (G1 x)$   
**apply** (*unfold dom-def map-add-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*drule sym*)  
**apply** (*erule equalityE*)  
**apply** (*unfold Int-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=x in allE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *dom-override-the3* [*simp*]:  
 $\llbracket x \notin \text{dom } G2; x \in \text{dom } G1 \rrbracket \implies ((G1 ++ G2) x) = (G1 x)$   
**apply** (*unfold dom-def map-add-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *Union-ran-override* [*simp*]:  
 $S \in \text{dom } G \implies \bigcup (\text{ran } (G ++ \text{Map.empty}(S \mapsto \text{insert } SA (\text{the}(G S)))))) =$   
 $(\text{insert } SA (\text{Union } (\text{ran } G)))$   
**apply** (*unfold dom-def ran-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac T*)  
**apply** (*case-tac T = S*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *Union-ran-override2* [*simp*]:  
 $S \in \text{dom } G \implies \bigcup (\text{ran } (G(S \mapsto \text{insert } SA (\text{the}(G S)))))) = (\text{insert } SA (\text{Union}$   
 $(\text{ran } G)))$   
**apply** (*unfold dom-def ran-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac T*)  
**apply** (*case-tac T = S*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ran-override* [*simp*]:  
 $(\text{dom } A \cap \text{dom } B) = \{\} \implies \text{ran } (A ++ B) = (\text{ran } A) \cup (\text{ran } B)$   
**apply** (*unfold Int-def ran-def*)  
**apply** (*simp add: map-add-Some-iff*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *chg-map-new* [*simp*]:  
 $m a = \text{None} \implies \text{chg-map } f a m = m$   
**by** (*unfold chg-map-def, auto*)

**lemma** *chg-map-upd* [*simp*]:  
 $m\ a = \text{Some } b \implies \text{chg-map } f\ a\ m = m(a|-\>f\ b)$   
**by** (*unfold chg-map-def, auto*)

**lemma** *ran-override-chg-map*:  
 $A \in \text{dom } G \implies \text{ran } (G ++ \text{Map.empty}(A|-\>B)) = (\text{ran } (\text{chg-map } (\lambda\ x.\ B)\ A\ G))$   
**apply** (*unfold dom-def ran-def*)  
**apply** (*subst map-add-Some-iff [THEN ext]*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac T*)  
**apply** (*case-tac T = A*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

### 1.1.5 Part

**definition** *Part* :: [*'a set, 'b => 'a*] => *'a set* **where**  
 $\text{Part } A\ h = A \cap \{x.\ \exists\ z.\ x = h(z)\}$

**lemma** *Part-UNIV-Inl-comp*:  
 $((\text{Part UNIV } (\text{Inl } o\ f)) = (\text{Part UNIV } (\text{Inl } o\ g))) = ((\text{Part UNIV } f) = (\text{Part UNIV } g))$   
**apply** (*unfold Part-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*erule equalityE*)  
**apply** (*erule subsetCE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*erule equalityE*)  
**apply** (*erule subsetCE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *Part-eqI* [*intro*]:  $\llbracket a \in A; a=h(b) \rrbracket \implies a \in \text{Part } A\ h$   
**by** (*auto simp add: Part-def*)

**lemmas** *PartI = Part-eqI [OF - refl]*

**lemma** *PartE* [*elim!*]:  $\llbracket a \in \text{Part } A\ h; \exists!z.\ \llbracket a \in A; a=h(z) \rrbracket \implies P \rrbracket \implies P$   
**by** (*auto simp add: Part-def*)

**lemma** *Part-subset*:  $\text{Part } A\ h \subseteq A$   
**by** (*auto simp add: Part-def*)

**lemma** *Part-mono*:  $A \subseteq B \implies \text{Part } A\ h \subseteq \text{Part } B\ h$   
**by** *blast*

**lemmas** *basic-monos = basic-monos Part-mono*

**lemma** *PartD1*:  $a \in \text{Part } A \ h \implies a \in A$   
**by** (*simp add: Part-def*)

**lemma** *Part-id*:  $\text{Part } A \ (\lambda x. x) = A$   
**by** *blast*

**lemma** *Part-Int*:  $\text{Part } (A \cap B) \ h = (\text{Part } A \ h) \cap (\text{Part } B \ h)$   
**by** *blast*

**lemma** *Part-Collect*:  $\text{Part } (A \cap \{x. P \ x\}) \ h = (\text{Part } A \ h) \cap \{x. P \ x\}$   
**by** *blast*

### 1.1.6 Set operators

**lemma** *subset-lemma*:  
 $\llbracket A \cap B = \{\}; A \subseteq B \rrbracket \implies A = \{\}$   
**by** *auto*

**lemma** *subset-lemma2*:  
 $\llbracket B \cap A = \{\}; C \subseteq A \rrbracket \implies C \cap B = \{\}$   
**by** *auto*

**lemma** *insert-inter*:  
 $\llbracket a \notin A; (A \cap B) = \{\} \rrbracket \implies (A \cap (\text{insert } a \ B)) = \{\}$   
**by** *auto*

**lemma** *insert-notmem*:  
 $\llbracket a \neq b; a \notin B \rrbracket \implies a \notin (\text{insert } b \ B)$   
**by** *auto*

**lemma** *insert-union*:  
 $A \cup (\text{insert } a \ B) = \text{insert } a \ A \cup B$   
**by** *auto*

**lemma** *insert-or*:  
 $\{s. s = t1 \vee (P \ s)\} = \text{insert } t1 \ \{s. P \ s\}$   
**by** *auto*

**lemma** *Collect-subset*:  
 $\{x. x \subseteq A \wedge P \ x\} = \{x \in \text{Pow } A. P \ x\}$   
**by** *auto*

**lemma** *OneElement-Card* [*simp*]:  
 $\llbracket \text{finite } M; \text{card } M \leq \text{Suc } 0; t \in M \rrbracket \implies M = \{t\}$   
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac s*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac P=finite M in mp*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac P=card M <= Suc 0 in mp*)

```

apply (rule-tac  $P=t \in M$  in mp)
apply (rule-tac  $F=M$  in finite-induct)
apply auto
apply (rule-tac  $P=finite\ M$  in mp)
apply (rule-tac  $P=card\ M \leq Suc\ 0$  in mp)
apply (rule-tac  $P=s \in M$  in mp)
apply (rule-tac  $P=t \in M$  in mp)
apply (rule-tac  $F=M$  in finite-induct)
apply auto
done

```

### 1.1.7 One point rule

**lemma** *Ex1-one-point* [simp]:

$$(\exists! x. P\ x \wedge x = a) = P\ a$$

**by** auto

**lemma** *Ex1-one-point2* [simp]:

$$(\exists! x. P\ x \wedge Q\ x \wedge x = a) = (P\ a \wedge Q\ a)$$

**by** auto

**lemma** *Some-one-point* [simp]:

$$P\ a \implies (SOME\ x. P\ x \wedge x = a) = a$$

**by** auto

**lemma** *Some-one-point2* [simp]:

$$\llbracket Q\ a; P\ a \rrbracket \implies (SOME\ x. P\ x \wedge Q\ x \wedge x = a) = a$$

**by** auto

**end**

## 2 Partitoned Data Spaces for Statecharts

**theory** *DataSpace*

**imports** *Contrib*

**begin**

### 2.1 Definitions

**definition**

*DataSpace* :: ('d set) list

=> bool **where**

*DataSpace* L = ((distinct L)  $\wedge$

( $\forall D1 \in (\text{set } L). \forall D2 \in (\text{set } L).$

$D1 \neq D2 \implies ((D1 \cap D2) = \{\})$ )  $\wedge$

(( $\bigcup (\text{set } L) = UNIV$ ))

**lemma** *DataSpace-EmptySet*:

$$[UNIV] \in \{ L \mid L. \text{DataSpace } L \}$$

**by** (*unfold DataSpace-def*, *auto*)

**definition** *dataspace* = { *L* | (*L*::('d set) list). *DataSpace L*}

**typedef** 'd *dataspace* = *dataspace* :: 'd set list set  
**unfolding** *dataspace-def*  
**apply** (*rule exI*)  
**apply** (*rule DataSpace-EmptySet*)  
**done**

**definition**

*PartNum* :: ('d) *dataspace* => nat **where**  
*PartNum* = length o *Rep-dataspace*

**definition**

*PartDom* :: ['d *dataspace*, nat] => ('d set) (**infixl** <!D!> 101) **where**  
*PartDom* *d n* = (*Rep-dataspace d*) ! *n*

## 2.2 Lemmas

### 2.2.1 *DataSpace*

**lemma** *DataSpace-UNIV* [*simp*]:

*DataSpace* [*UNIV*]

**by** (*unfold DataSpace-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *DataSpace-select*:

*DataSpace* (*Rep-dataspace L*)

**apply** (*cut-tac x=L in Rep-dataspace*)

**apply** (*unfold dataspace-def*)

**apply** *auto*

**done**

**lemma** *UNIV-dataspace* [*simp*]:

[*UNIV*] ∈ *dataspace*

**by** (*unfold dataspace-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *Inl-Inr-DataSpace* [*simp*]:

*DataSpace* [*Part UNIV Inl*, *Part UNIV Inr*]

**apply** (*unfold DataSpace-def*)

**apply** *auto*

**apply** (*rename-tac d*)

**apply** (*rule-tac b=(inv Inl) d in Part-eqI*)

**apply** *auto*

**apply** (*rule sym*)

**apply** (*case-tac d*)

**apply** *auto*

**done**

**lemma** *Inl-Inr-dataspace* [*simp*]:

$[Part\ UNIV\ Inl, Part\ UNIV\ Inr] \in\ dataspace$   
**by** (*unfold dataspace-def, auto*)

**lemma** *InlInr-InlInl-Inr-DataSpace* [*simp*]:  
 $DataSource\ [Part\ UNIV\ (Inl\ o\ Inr), Part\ UNIV\ (Inl\ o\ Inl), Part\ UNIV\ Inr]$   
**apply** (*unfold DataSource-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*unfold Part-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac x*)  
**apply** (*case-tac x*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac a*)  
**apply** (*case-tac a*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *InlInr-InlInl-Inr-dataspace* [*simp*]:  
 $[Part\ UNIV\ (Inl\ o\ Inr), Part\ UNIV\ (Inl\ o\ Inl), Part\ UNIV\ Inr] :\ dataspace$   
**by** (*unfold dataspace-def, auto*)

### 2.2.2 PartNum

**lemma** *PartDom-PartNum-distinct*:  

$$\llbracket i < PartNum\ d; j < PartNum\ d; \\ i \neq j; p \in (d\ !D!\ i) \rrbracket \implies \\ p \notin (d\ !D!\ j)$$
  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*cut-tac L=d in DataSource-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold DataSource-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=Rep-dataspace d ! i in ballE*)  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=Rep-dataspace d ! j in ballE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*simp add:distinct-conv-nth PartNum-def*)  
**apply** (*unfold PartDom-def PartNum-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *PartDom-PartNum-distinct2*:  

$$\llbracket i < PartNum\ d; j < PartNum\ d; \\ i \neq j; p \in (d\ !D!\ j) \rrbracket \implies \\ p \notin (d\ !D!\ i)$$
  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*cut-tac L=d in DataSource-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold DataSource-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=Rep-dataspace d ! i in ballE*)  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=Rep-dataspace d ! j in ballE*)

```

apply auto
apply (simp add:distinct-conv-nth PartNum-def)
apply (unfold PartDom-def PartNum-def)
apply auto
done

lemma PartNum-length [simp]:
  (DataSpace L)  $\implies$  (PartNum (Abs-dataspace L) = (length L))
apply (unfold PartNum-def)
apply auto
apply (subst Abs-dataspace-inverse)
apply (unfold dataspace-def)
apply auto
done

end

```

### 3 Data Space Assignments

```

theory Data
imports DataSpace
begin

```

#### 3.1 Total data space assignments

**definition**

```

Data :: ['d list, 'd dataspace]
  => bool where
  Data L D = (((length L) = (PartNum D))  $\wedge$ 
    ( $\forall i \in \{n. n < (\text{PartNum } D)\}. (L!i) \in (\text{PartDom } D \ i)$ ))

```

**lemma** *Data-EmptySet:*

```

  ([@ t. True], Abs-dataspace [UNIV])  $\in$  { (L,D) | L D. Data L D }
apply (unfold Data-def PartDom-def)
apply auto
apply (subst Abs-dataspace-inverse)
apply auto
done

```

**definition**

```

data =
  { (L,D) |
    (L::'d list)
    (D::'d dataspace).
    Data L D }

```

```

typedef 'd data = data :: ('d list * 'd dataspace) set
unfolding data-def
apply (rule exI)

```

**apply** (*rule Data-EmptySet*)  
**done**

**definition**

$DataValue :: ('d\ data) => ('d\ list)$  **where**  
 $DataValue = fst\ o\ Rep-data$

**definition**

$DataSpace :: ('d\ data) => ('d\ dataspace)$  **where**  
 $DataSpace = snd\ o\ Rep-data$

**definition**

$DataPart :: ['d\ data, nat] => 'd\ (\langle(-\ !P!\ -)\rangle [10,11]10)$  **where**  
 $DataPart\ d\ n = (DataValue\ d)\ !\ n$

**lemma** *Rep-data-tuple*:

$Rep-data\ D = (DataValue\ D, DataSpace\ D)$   
**by** (*unfold DataValue-def DataSpace-def, simp*)

**lemma** *Rep-data-select*:

$(DataValue\ D, DataSpace\ D) \in data$   
**apply** (*subst Rep-data-tuple [THEN sym]*)  
**apply** (*rule Rep-data*)  
**done**

**lemma** *Data-select*:

$Data\ (DataValue\ D)\ (DataSpace\ D)$   
**apply** (*cut-tac D=D in Rep-data-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold data-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *length-DataValue-PartNum [simp]*:

$length\ (DataValue\ D) = PartNum\ (Data.DataSpace\ D)$   
**apply** (*cut-tac D=D in Data-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold Data-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *DataValue-PartDom [simp]*:

$i < PartNum\ (Data.DataSpace\ D) \implies$   
 $DataValue\ D\ !\ i \in PartDom\ (Data.DataSpace\ D)\ i$   
**apply** (*cut-tac D=D in Data-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold Data-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *DataPart-PartDom [simp]*:

$i < PartNum\ (Data.DataSpace\ d) \longrightarrow (d\ !P!\ i) \in ((Data.DataSpace\ d)\ !D!\ i)$

```

apply (unfold DataPart-def)
apply auto
done

```

### 3.2 Partial data space assignments

**definition**

```

PData :: ['d option list, 'd dataspace] => bool where
PData L D == ((length L) = (PartNum D)) ∧
  (∀ i ∈ {n. n < (PartNum D)}.
    (L!i) ≠ None → the (L!i) ∈ (PartDom D i))

```

**lemma** PData-EmptySet:

```

([Some (@ t. True)], Abs-dataspace [UNIV]) ∈ { (L,D) | L D. PData L D }

```

```

apply (unfold PData-def PartDom-def)
apply auto
apply (subst Abs-dataspace-inverse)
apply auto
done

```

**definition**

```

pdata =
  { (L,D) |
    (L::('d option list))
    (D::('d dataspace)).
    PData L D }

```

```

typedef 'd pdata = pdata :: ('d option list * 'd dataspace) set
unfolding pdata-def
apply (rule exI)
apply (rule PData-EmptySet)
done

```

**definition**

```

PDataValue :: ('d pdata) => ('d option list) where
PDataValue = fst o Rep-pdata

```

**definition**

```

PDataSpace :: ('d pdata) => ('d dataspace) where
PDataSpace = snd o Rep-pdata

```

**definition**

```

Data2PData :: ('d data) => ('d pdata) where
Data2PData D = (let
  (L,DP) = Rep-data D;
  OL     = map Some L
  in
  Abs-pdata (OL,DP))

```

**definition**

$PData2Data :: ('d\ pdata) \Rightarrow ('d\ data)$  **where**  
 $PData2Data\ D = (let$   
      $(OL,DP) = Rep-pdata\ D;$   
      $L = map\ the\ OL$   
**in**  
      $Abs-data\ (L,DP))$

**definition**

$DefaultPData :: ('d\ dataspace) \Rightarrow ('d\ pdata)$  **where**  
 $DefaultPData\ D = Abs-pdata\ (replicate\ (PartNum\ D)\ None,\ D)$

**definition**

$OptionOverride :: ('d\ option * 'd) \Rightarrow 'd$  **where**  
 $OptionOverride\ P = (if\ (fst\ P) = None\ then\ (snd\ P)\ else\ (the\ (fst\ P)))$

**definition**

$DataOverride :: ['d\ pdata,\ 'd\ data] \Rightarrow 'd\ data$  ( $\langle(-\ [D+]/\ -)\rangle\ [10,11]10$ ) **where**  
 $DataOverride\ D1\ D2 =$   
      $(let$   
          $(L1,DP1) = Rep-pdata\ D1;$   
          $(L2,DP2) = Rep-data\ D2;$   
          $L = map\ OptionOverride\ (zip\ L1\ L2)$   
     **in**  
          $Abs-data\ (L,DP2))$

**lemma Rep-pdata-tuple:**

$Rep-pdata\ D = (PDataValue\ D,\ PDataSpace\ D)$   
**apply** ( $unfold\ PData\ Value-def\ PDataSpace-def$ )  
**apply** ( $simp$ )  
**done**

**lemma Rep-pdata-select:**

$(PDataValue\ D,\ PDataSpace\ D) \in pdata$   
**apply** ( $subst\ Rep-pdata-tuple\ [THEN\ sym]$ )  
**apply** ( $rule\ Rep-pdata$ )  
**done**

**lemma PData-select:**

$PData\ (PDataValue\ D)\ (PDataSpace\ D)$   
**apply** ( $cut-tac\ D=D\ in\ Rep-pdata-select$ )  
**apply** ( $unfold\ pdata-def$ )  
**apply**  $auto$   
**done**

**3.2.1 DefaultPData****lemma PData-DefaultPData [simp]:**

$PData\ (replicate\ (PartNum\ D)\ None)\ D$

```

apply (unfold PData-def)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma pdata-DefaultPData [simp]:
  (replicate (PartNum D) None, D) ∈ pdata
apply (unfold pdata-def)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma PDataSpace-DefaultPData [simp]:
  PDataSpace (DefaultPData D) = D
apply (unfold DataSpace-def PDataSpace-def DefaultPData-def)
apply auto
apply (subst Abs-pdata-inverse)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma length-PartNum-PData [simp]:
  length (PDataValue P) = PartNum (PDataSpace P)
apply (cut-tac D=P in Rep-pdata-select)
apply (unfold pdata-def PData-def)
apply auto
done

```

### 3.2.2 Data2PData

```

lemma PData-Data2PData [simp]:
  PData (map Some (DataValue D)) (Data.DataSpace D)
apply (unfold PData-def)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma pdata-Data2PData [simp]:
  (map Some (DataValue D), Data.DataSpace D) ∈ pdata
apply (unfold pdata-def)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma DataSpace-Data2PData [simp]:
  (PDataSpace (Data2PData D)) = (Data.DataSpace D)
apply (unfold DataSpace-def PDataSpace-def Data2PData-def Let-def)
apply auto
apply (cut-tac D=D in Rep-data-tuple)
apply auto
apply (subst Abs-pdata-inverse)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma PDataValue-Data2PData-DataValue [simp]:
  (map the (PDataValue (Data2PData D))) = DataValue D
apply (unfold DataValue-def PDataValue-def Data2PData-def Let-def)
apply auto
apply (cut-tac D=D in Rep-data-tuple)
apply auto
apply (subst Abs-pdata-inverse)
apply simp
apply (simp del: map-map)
done

```

```

lemma DataSpace-PData2Data:
  Data (map the (PDataValue D)) (PDataSpace D)  $\implies$ 
  (Data.DataSpace (PData2Data D) = (PDataSpace D))
apply (unfold DataSpace-def PDataSpace-def PData2Data-def Let-def)
apply auto
apply (cut-tac D=D in Rep-pdata-tuple)
apply auto
apply (subst Abs-data-inverse)
apply (unfold data-def)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma PartNum-PDataValue-PartDom [simp]:
   $\llbracket i < \text{PartNum } (PDataSpace Q);$ 
   $\text{PDataValue } Q ! i = \text{Some } y \rrbracket \implies$ 
   $y \in \text{PartDom } (PDataSpace Q) i$ 
apply (cut-tac D=Q in Rep-pdata-select)
apply (unfold pdata-def PData-def)
apply auto
done

```

### 3.2.3 DataOverride

```

lemma Data-DataOverride:
  ((PDataSpace P) = (Data.DataSpace Q))  $\implies$ 
  Data (map OptionOverride (zip (PDataValue P) (Data.DataValue Q))) (Data.DataSpace
  Q)
apply (unfold Data-def)
apply auto
apply (unfold OptionOverride-def)
apply auto
apply (rename-tac i D)
apply (case-tac PDataValue P ! i = None)
apply auto
apply (drule sym)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** *data-DataOverride*:  
 $((PDataSpace P) = (Data.DataSpace Q)) \implies$   
 $(map OptionOverride (zip (PDataValue P) (Data.DataValue Q)), Data.DataSpace Q) \in data$   
**apply** (*unfold data-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rule Data-DataOverride*)  
**apply** *fast*  
**done**

**lemma** *DataSpace-DataOverride [simp]*:  
 $((Data.DataSpace D) = (PDataSpace E)) \implies$   
 $Data.DataSpace (E [D+] D) = (Data.DataSpace D)$   
**apply** (*unfold DataSpace-def DataOverride-def Let-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*cut-tac D=D in Rep-data-tuple*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac D=E in Rep-pdata-tuple*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*subst Abs-data-inverse*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*drule sym*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*rule data-DataOverride*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *DataValue-DataOverride [simp]*:  
 $((PDataSpace P) = (Data.DataSpace Q)) \implies$   
 $(DataValue (P [D+] Q)) = (map OptionOverride (zip (PDataValue P) (Data.DataValue Q)))$   
**apply** (*unfold DataValue-def DataOverride-def Let-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*cut-tac D=P in Rep-pdata-tuple*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac D=Q in Rep-data-tuple*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*subst Abs-data-inverse*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rule data-DataOverride*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

### 3.2.4 OptionOverride

**lemma** *DataValue-OptionOverride-nth*:  
 $\llbracket ((PDataSpace P) = (DataSpace Q));$   
 $i < PartNum (DataSpace Q) \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(DataValue (P [D+] Q) ! i) =$   
 $OptionOverride (PDataValue P ! i, DataValue Q ! i)$   
**apply** *auto*

**done**

**lemma** *None-OptionOverride* [simp]:

$(fst P) = None \implies OptionOverride P = (snd P)$

**apply** (unfold *OptionOverride-def*)

**apply** *auto*

**done**

**lemma** *Some-OptionOverride* [simp]:

$(fst P) \neq None \implies OptionOverride P = the (fst P)$

**apply** (unfold *OptionOverride-def*)

**apply** *auto*

**done**

**end**

## 4 Update-Functions on Data Spaces

**theory** *Update*

**imports** *Data*

**begin**

### 4.1 Total update-functions

**definition**

$Update :: ('d\ data) \Rightarrow ('d\ data) \Rightarrow bool$  **where**

$Update\ U = (\forall\ d.\ Data.DataSpace\ d = DataSpace\ (U\ d))$

**lemma** *Update-EmptySet*:

$(\% d.\ d) \in \{ L \mid L.\ Update\ L \}$

**by** (unfold *Update-def*, *auto*)

**definition**

$update = \{ L \mid (L :: ('d\ data) \Rightarrow ('d\ data)) \}.\ Update\ L \}$

**typedef**  $'d\ update = update :: ('d\ data \Rightarrow 'd\ data)\ set$

**unfolding** *update-def*

**apply** (rule *exI*)

**apply** (rule *Update-EmptySet*)

**done**

**definition**

$UpdateApply :: ['d\ update, 'd\ data] \Rightarrow 'd\ data (\langle (-\ !!!/ -) \rangle [10,11]10)$  **where**

$UpdateApply\ U\ D == Rep-update\ U\ D$

**definition**

$DefaultUpdate :: ('d\ update)$  **where**

$DefaultUpdate == Abs-update\ (\lambda\ D.\ D)$

### 4.1.1 Basic lemmas

```
lemma Update-select:  
  Update (Rep-update U)  
apply (cut-tac x=U in Rep-update)  
apply (unfold update-def)  
apply auto  
done
```

```
lemma DataSpace-DataSpace-Update [simp]:  
  Data.DataSpace (Rep-update U DP) = Data.DataSpace DP  
apply (cut-tac U=U in Update-select)  
apply (unfold Update-def)  
apply auto  
done
```

### 4.1.2 DefaultUpdate

```
lemma Update-DefaultUpdate [simp]:  
  Update (λ D. D)  
by (unfold Update-def, auto)
```

```
lemma update-DefaultUpdate [simp]:  
   $(\lambda D. D) \in \text{update}$   
by (unfold update-def, auto)
```

```
lemma DataSpace-UpdateApply [simp]:  
  Data.DataSpace (U !!! D) = Data.DataSpace D  
by (unfold UpdateApply-def, auto)
```

## 4.2 Partial update-functions

### definition

```
PUpdate :: (('d data) => ('d pdata)) => bool where  
PUpdate U = ( $\forall d. \text{Data.DataSpace } d = \text{PDataSpace } (U d)$ )
```

```
lemma PUpdate-EmptySet:  
   $(\% d. \text{Data2PData } d) \in \{ L \mid L. \text{PUpdate } L \}$   
by (unfold PUpdate-def, auto)
```

```
definition pupdate = { L | (L::('d data) => ('d pdata)). PUpdate L }
```

```
typedef 'd pupdate = pupdate :: ('d data => 'd pdata) set  
  unfolding pupdate-def  
  apply (rule exI)  
  apply (rule PUpdate-EmptySet)  
  done
```

### definition

```
PUpdateApply :: ['d pupdate, 'd data] => 'd pdata  $\langle (- !!/ -) \rangle$  [10,11]10 where
```

$PUpdateApply\ U\ D = Rep-pupdate\ U\ D$

**definition**

$DefaultPUpdate :: ('d\ pupdate)\ \mathbf{where}$   
 $DefaultPUpdate = Abs-pupdate\ (\lambda\ D.\ DefaultPData\ (Data.DataSpace\ D))$

**4.2.1 Basic lemmas**

**lemma**  $PUpdate-select$ :

$PUpdate\ (Rep-pupdate\ U)$   
**apply**  $(cut-tac\ x=U\ \mathbf{in}\ Rep-pupdate)$   
**apply**  $(unfold\ pupdate-def)$   
**apply**  $auto$   
**done**

**lemma**  $DataSpace-PDataSpace-PUpdate\ [simp]$ :

$PDataSpace\ (Rep-pupdate\ U\ DP) = Data.DataSpace\ DP$   
**apply**  $(cut-tac\ U=U\ \mathbf{in}\ PUpdate-select)$   
**apply**  $(unfold\ PUpdate-def)$   
**apply**  $auto$   
**done**

**4.2.2 Data2PData**

**lemma**  $PUpdate-Data2PData\ [simp]$ :

$PUpdate\ Data2PData$   
**by**  $(unfold\ PUpdate-def,\ auto)$

**lemma**  $pupdate-Data2PData\ [simp]$ :

$Data2PData \in pupdate$   
**by**  $(unfold\ pupdate-def,\ auto)$

**4.2.3 PUpdate**

**lemma**  $PUpdate-DefaultPUpdate\ [simp]$ :

$PUpdate\ (\lambda\ D.\ DefaultPData\ (Data.DataSpace\ D))$   
**apply**  $(unfold\ PUpdate-def)$   
**apply**  $auto$   
**done**

**lemma**  $pupdate-DefaultPUpdate\ [simp]$ :

$(\lambda\ D.\ DefaultPData\ (Data.DataSpace\ D)) \in pupdate$   
**apply**  $(unfold\ pupdate-def)$   
**apply**  $auto$   
**done**

**lemma**  $DefaultPUpdate-None\ [simp]$ :

$(DefaultPUpdate\ !!\ D) = DefaultPData\ (DataSpace\ D)$   
**apply**  $(unfold\ DefaultPUpdate-def\ PUpdateApply-def)$   
**apply**  $(subst\ Abs-pupdate-inverse)$

**apply auto**  
**done**

#### 4.2.4 SequentialRacing

**definition**

$UpdateOverride :: ['d\ pupdate, 'd\ update] =>$   
 $\quad 'd\ update \langle (- [U+]/ -) \rangle [10,11]10$  **where**  
 $UpdateOverride\ U\ P = Abs-update\ (\lambda\ DA . (U\ !!\ DA)\ [D+]\ (P\ !!!\ DA))$

**inductive**

$FoldSet :: ('b => 'a => 'a) => 'a => 'b\ set => 'a => bool$   
**for**  $h :: 'b => 'a => 'a$   
**and**  $z :: 'a$

**where**

$emptyI\ [intro]: FoldSet\ h\ z\ \{\}\ z$   
 $| insertI\ [intro]:$   
 $\quad \llbracket x \notin A; FoldSet\ h\ z\ A\ y \rrbracket$   
 $\quad \implies FoldSet\ h\ z\ (insert\ x\ A)\ (h\ x\ y)$

**definition**

$SequentialRacing :: ('d\ pupdate\ set) => ('d\ update\ set)$  **where**  
 $SequentialRacing\ U =$   
 $\quad \{u. FoldSet\ UpdateOverride\ DefaultUpdate\ U\ u\}$

**lemma FoldSet-imp-finite:**

$FoldSet\ h\ z\ A\ x \implies finite\ A$

**by**  $(induct\ set: FoldSet)\ auto$

**lemma finite-imp-FoldSet:**

$finite\ A \implies \exists x. FoldSet\ h\ z\ A\ x$

**by**  $(induct\ set: finite)\ auto$

**lemma finite-SequentialRacing:**

$finite\ US \implies (SOME\ u. u \in SequentialRacing\ US) \in SequentialRacing\ US$

**apply**  $(unfold\ SequentialRacing-def)$

**apply auto**

**apply**  $(drule-tac\ h=UpdateOverride\ \mathbf{and}\ z=DefaultUpdate\ \mathbf{in}\ finite-imp-FoldSet)$

**apply auto**

**apply**  $(rule\ someI)$

**apply auto**

**done**

end

## 5 Label Expressions

```
theory Expr
imports Update
begin
```

```
unbundle no-bit-operations-syntax
```

```
datatype ('s,'e)expr = true
| In 's
| En 'e
| NOT ('s,'e)expr
| And ('s,'e)expr ('s,'e)expr
| Or ('s,'e)expr ('s,'e)expr
```

```
type-synonym 'd guard = ('d data) => bool
type-synonym ('e,'d)action = ('e set * 'd pupdate)
type-synonym ('s,'e,'d)label = (('s,'e)expr * 'd guard * ('e,'d)action)
type-synonym ('s,'e,'d)trans = ('s * ('s,'e,'d)label * 's)
```

```
primrec
```

```
eval-expr :: [('s set * 'e set), ('s,'e)expr] => bool where
  eval-expr sc true      = True
| eval-expr sc (En ev)   = (ev ∈ snd sc)
| eval-expr sc (In st)   = (st ∈ fst sc)
| eval-expr sc (NOT e1)  = (¬ (eval-expr sc e1))
| eval-expr sc (And e1 e2) = ((eval-expr sc e1) ∧ (eval-expr sc e2))
| eval-expr sc (Or e1 e2) = ((eval-expr sc e1) ∨ (eval-expr sc e2))
```

```
primrec
```

```
ExprEvents :: ('s,'e)expr => 'e set where
  ExprEvents true      = {}
| ExprEvents (En ev)   = {ev}
| ExprEvents (In st)   = {}
| ExprEvents (NOT e)   = (ExprEvents e)
| ExprEvents (And e1 e2) = ((ExprEvents e1) ∪ (ExprEvents e2))
| ExprEvents (Or e1 e2) = ((ExprEvents e1) ∪ (ExprEvents e2))
```

```
datatype ('s, 'e, dead 'd)atomar =
  TRUE
| FALSE
| IN 's
| EN 'e
```

| VAL 'd data => bool

**definition**

*source* :: ('s,'e,'d)trans => 's **where**  
*source t* = fst t

**definition**

*Source* :: ('s,'e,'d)trans set => 's set **where**  
*Source T* == source ' T

**definition**

*target* :: ('s,'e,'d)trans => 's **where**  
*target t* = snd(snd t)

**definition**

*Target* :: ('s,'e,'d)trans set => 's set **where**  
*Target T* = target ' T

**definition**

*label* :: ('s,'e,'d)trans => ('s,'e,'d)label **where**  
*label t* = fst (snd t)

**definition**

*Label* :: ('s,'e,'d)trans set => ('s,'e,'d)label set **where**  
*Label T* = label ' T

**definition**

*expr* :: ('s,'e,'d)label => ('s,'e)expr **where**  
*expr* = fst

**definition**

*action* :: ('s,'e,'d)label => ('e,'d)action **where**  
*action* = snd o snd

**definition**

*Action* :: ('s,'e,'d)label set => ('e,'d)action set **where**  
*Action L* = action ' L

**definition**

*pupdate* :: ('s,'e,'d)label => 'd pupdate **where**  
*pupdate* = snd o action

**definition**

*PUpdate* :: ('s,'e,'d)label set => ('d pupdate) set **where**  
*PUpdate L* = pupdate ' L

**definition**

*actevent* :: ('s,'e,'d)label => 'e set **where**  
*actevent* = fst o action

**definition**

*Actevent* :: ('s,'e,'d)label set => ('e set) set **where**  
*Actevent* L = *actevent* ' L

**definition**

*guard* :: ('s,'e,'d)label => 'd guard **where**  
*guard* = *fst* o *snd*

**definition**

*Guard* :: ('s,'e,'d)label set => ('d guard) set **where**  
*Guard* L = *guard* ' L

**definition**

*defaultexpr* :: ('s,'e)expr **where**  
*defaultexpr* = *true*

**definition**

*defaultaction* :: ('e,'d)action **where**  
*defaultaction* = ({},*DefaultPUpdate*)

**definition**

*defaultguard* :: ('d guard) **where**  
*defaultguard* = ( $\lambda$  d. *True*)

**definition**

*defaultlabel* :: ('s,'e,'d)label **where**  
*defaultlabel* = (*defaultexpr*, *defaultguard*, *defaultaction*)

**definition**

*eval* :: (('s set \* 'e set \* 'd data), ('s,'e,'d)label) => bool  
( $\leftarrow$  | =  $\rightarrow$  [91,90]90) **where**  
*eval* *scd* l = (let (s,e,d) = *scd*  
in  
((*eval-expr* (s,e) (*expr* l))  $\wedge$  ((*guard* l) d)))

**lemma** *Source-EmptySet* [*simp*]:

*Source* {} = {}  
**by** (*unfold Source-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *Target-EmptySet* [*simp*]:

*Target* {} = {}  
**by** (*unfold Target-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *Label-EmptySet* [*simp*]:

*Label* {} = {}  
**by** (*unfold Label-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *Action-EmptySet* [*simp*]:

*Action* {} = {}  
**by** (*unfold Action-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *PUpdate-EmptySet* [*simp*]:  
*PUpdate* {} = {}  
**by** (*unfold PUpdate-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *Actevent-EmptySet* [*simp*]:  
*Actevent* {} = {}  
**by** (*unfold Actevent-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *Union-Actevent-subset*:  
[[  $m \in M; ((\bigcup (\text{Actevent } (\text{Label } (\text{Union } M)))) \subseteq (N::'a \text{ set}))$  ]]  $\implies$   
[[  $(\bigcup (\text{Actevent } (\text{Label } m))) \subseteq N$  ]]  
**by** (*unfold Actevent-def Label-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *action-select* [*simp*]:  
*action* (a,b,c) = c  
**by** (*unfold action-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *label-select* [*simp*]:  
*label* (a,b,c) = b  
**by** (*unfold label-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *target-select* [*simp*]:  
*target* (a,b,c) = c  
**by** (*unfold target-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *actevent-select* [*simp*]:  
*actevent* (a,b,(c,d)) = c  
**by** (*unfold actevent-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *pupdate-select* [*simp*]:  
*pupdate* (a,b,c,d) = d  
**by** (*unfold pupdate-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *source-select* [*simp*]:  
*source* (a,b) = a  
**by** (*unfold source-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *finite-PUpdate* [*simp*]:  
*finite* S  $\implies$  *finite*(*PUpdate* S)  
**by** (*unfold PUpdate-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *finite-Label* [*simp*]:  
*finite* S  $\implies$  *finite*(*Label* S)  
**by** (*unfold Label-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *fst-defaultaction* [*simp*]:

```

    fst defaultaction = {}
  by (unfold defaultaction-def, auto)

lemma action-defaultlabel [simp]:
  (action defaultlabel) = defaultaction
  by (unfold defaultlabel-def action-def, auto)

lemma fst-defaultlabel [simp]:
  (fst defaultlabel) = defaultexpr
  by (unfold defaultlabel-def, auto)

lemma ExprEvents-defaultexpr [simp]:
  (ExprEvents defaultexpr) = {}
  by (unfold defaultexpr-def, auto)

lemma defaultlabel-defaultexpr [simp]:
  expr defaultlabel = defaultexpr
  by (unfold defaultlabel-def expr-def, auto)

lemma target-Target [simp]:
  t ∈ T ⇒ target t ∈ Target T
  by (unfold Target-def, auto)

lemma Source-union : Source s ∪ Source t = Source (s ∪ t)
  apply (unfold Source-def)
  apply auto
  done

lemma Target-union : Target s ∪ Target t = Target (s ∪ t)
  apply (unfold Target-def)
  apply auto
  done

end

```

## 6 Sequential Automata

```

theory SA
imports Expr
begin

```

**definition**

```

SeqAuto :: ['s set,
            's,
            (('s,'e,'d)label) set,
            (('s,'e,'d)trans) set]
=> bool where
SeqAuto S I L D = (I ∈ S ∧ S ≠ {} ∧ finite S ∧ finite D ∧
                  (∀ (s,l,t) ∈ D. s ∈ S ∧ t ∈ S ∧ l ∈ L))

```

**lemma** *SeqAuto-EmptySet*:  
 $(\{\text{@}x . \text{True}\}, (\text{@}x . \text{True}), \{\}, \{\}) \in \{(S,I,L,D) \mid S I L D. \text{SeqAuto } S I L D\}$   
**by** (*unfold SeqAuto-def, auto*)

**definition**

```
seqauto =
  { (S,I,L,D) |
    (S::'s set)
    (I::'s)
    (L::('s,'e,'d)label) set
    (D::('s,'e,'d)trans) set.
    SeqAuto S I L D }
```

**typedef** ('s,'e,'d) *seqauto* =  
*seqauto* :: ('s set \* 's \* (('s,'e,'d)label) set \* (('s,'e,'d)trans) set) set  
**unfolding** *seqauto-def*  
**apply** (*rule exI*)  
**apply** (*rule SeqAuto-EmptySet*)  
**done**

**definition**

```
States :: (('s,'e,'d)seqauto) => 's set where
States = fst o Rep-seqauto
```

**definition**

```
InitState :: (('s,'e,'d)seqauto) => 's where
InitState = fst o snd o Rep-seqauto
```

**definition**

```
Labels :: (('s,'e,'d)seqauto) => (('s,'e,'d)label) set where
Labels = fst o snd o snd o Rep-seqauto
```

**definition**

```
Delta :: (('s,'e,'d)seqauto) => (('s,'e,'d)trans) set where
Delta = snd o snd o snd o Rep-seqauto
```

**definition**

```
SAEvents :: (('s,'e,'d)seqauto) => 'e set where
SAEvents SA = ( $\bigcup l \in \text{Label } (\text{Delta } SA). (\text{fst } (\text{action } l)) \cup (\text{ExprEvents } (\text{expr } l))$ )
```

**lemma** *Rep-seqauto-tuple*:

```
Rep-seqauto SA = (States SA, InitState SA, Labels SA, Delta SA)  

by (unfold States-def InitState-def Labels-def Delta-def, auto)
```

**lemma** *Rep-seqauto-select*:

```
(States SA, InitState SA, Labels SA, Delta SA)  $\in$  seqauto  

by (rule Rep-seqauto-tuple [THEN subst], rule Rep-seqauto)
```

```

lemma SeqAuto-select:
  SeqAuto (States SA) (InitState SA) (Labels SA) (Delta SA)
by (cut-tac SA=SA in Rep-seqauto-select, unfold seqauto-def, auto)

lemma neq-States [simp]:
  States SA  $\neq$  {}
apply (cut-tac Rep-seqauto-select)
apply auto
apply (unfold seqauto-def SeqAuto-def)
apply auto
done

lemma SA-States-disjunct :
  (States A)  $\cap$  (States A') = {}  $\implies$  A'  $\neq$  A
by auto

lemma SA-States-disjunct2 :
   $\llbracket$  (States A)  $\cap$  C = {}; States B  $\subseteq$  C  $\rrbracket \implies$  B  $\neq$  A
apply (rule SA-States-disjunct)
apply auto
done

lemma SA-States-disjunct3 :
   $\llbracket$  C  $\cap$  States A = {}; States B  $\subseteq$  C  $\rrbracket \implies$  States A  $\cap$  States B = {}
apply (cut-tac SA=B in neq-States)
apply fast
done

lemma EX-State-SA [simp]:
   $\exists$  S. S  $\in$  States SA
apply (cut-tac Rep-seqauto-select)
apply (unfold seqauto-def SeqAuto-def)
apply auto
done

lemma finite-States [simp]:
  finite (States A)
apply (cut-tac Rep-seqauto-select)
apply (unfold seqauto-def SeqAuto-def)
apply auto
done

lemma finite-Delta [simp]:
  finite (Delta A)
apply (cut-tac Rep-seqauto-select)
apply (unfold seqauto-def SeqAuto-def)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** *InitState-States* [simp]:

*InitState A*  $\in$  *States A*  
**apply** (*cut-tac Rep-seqauto-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold seqauto-def SeqAuto-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *SeqAuto-EmptySet-States* [simp]:

$(\text{States } (\text{Abs-seqauto } (\{\text{@x. True}\}, (\text{@x. True}), \{\}, \{\}))) = \{\{\text{@x. True}\}\}$   
**apply** (*unfold States-def*)  
**apply** (*simp*)  
**apply** (*subst Abs-seqauto-inverse*)  
**apply** (*unfold seqauto-def*)  
**apply** (*rule SeqAuto-EmptySet*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *SeqAuto-EmptySet-SAEvents* [simp]:

$(\text{SAEvents } (\text{Abs-seqauto } (\{\text{@x. True}\}, (\text{@x. True}), \{\}, \{\}))) = \{\}$   
**apply** (*unfold SAEvents-def Delta-def*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*subst Abs-seqauto-inverse*)  
**apply** (*unfold seqauto-def*)  
**apply** (*rule SeqAuto-EmptySet*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *Label-Delta-subset* [simp]:

$(\text{Label } (\text{Delta } SA)) \subseteq \text{Labels } SA$   
**apply** (*unfold Label-def label-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*cut-tac SA=SA in SeqAuto-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold SeqAuto-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *Target-SAs-Delta-States*:

$\text{Target } (\bigcup (\text{Delta } ' (SAs HA))) \subseteq \bigcup (\text{States } ' (SAs HA))$   
**apply** (*unfold image-def Target-def target-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac SA Source Trigger Guard Action Update Target*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac SA=SA in SeqAuto-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold SeqAuto-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *States-Int-not-mem*:

$(\bigcup (\text{States } ' F) \text{Int States } SA) = \{\} \implies SA \notin F$

```

apply (unfold Int-def)
apply auto
apply (subgoal-tac  $\exists S. S \in \text{States } SA$ )
prefer 2
apply (rule EX-State-SA)
apply (erule exE)
apply (rename-tac T)
apply (erule-tac  $x=T$  in allE)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma Delta-target-States [simp]:
   $\llbracket T \in \text{Delta } A \rrbracket \implies \text{target } T \in \text{States } A$ 
apply (cut-tac  $SA=A$  in SeqAuto-select)
apply (unfold SeqAuto-def source-def target-def)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma Delta-source-States [simp]:
   $\llbracket T \in \text{Delta } A \rrbracket \implies \text{source } T \in \text{States } A$ 
apply (cut-tac  $SA=A$  in SeqAuto-select)
apply (unfold SeqAuto-def source-def target-def)
apply auto
done

```

**end**

## 7 Syntax of Hierarchical Automata

```

theory HA
imports SA
begin

```

### 7.1 Definitions

```

definition
  RootEx :: [ $((s',e',d)\text{seqauto})$  set,
     $s' \rightarrow (s',e',d)\text{ seqauto set}$ ]  $\implies$  bool where
  RootEx F G =  $(\exists! A. A \in F \wedge A \notin \bigcup (\text{ran } G))$ 

```

```

definition
  Root :: [ $((s',e',d)\text{seqauto})$  set,
     $s' \rightarrow (s',e',d)\text{ seqauto set}$ ]
     $\implies (s',e',d)\text{ seqauto}$  where
  Root F G =  $(@ A. A \in F \wedge A \notin \bigcup (\text{ran } G))$ 

```

```

definition

```

*MutuallyDistinct* :: ((*'s, 'e, 'd*)seqauto) set => bool **where**  
*MutuallyDistinct* F =  
 ( $\forall a \in F. \forall b \in F. a \neq b \longrightarrow (\text{States } a) \cap (\text{States } b) = \{\}$ )

**definition**

*OneAncestor* :: [(*'s, 'e, 'd*)seqauto] set,  
 '*s*  $\rightarrow$  (*'s, 'e, 'd*) seqauto set] => bool **where**  
*OneAncestor* F G =  
 ( $\forall A \in F - \{\text{Root } F \ G\} .$   
 $\exists! s. s \in (\bigcup A' \in F - \{A\} . \text{States } A') \wedge$   
 $A \in \text{the } (G \ s)$ )

**definition**

*NoCycles* :: [(*'s, 'e, 'd*)seqauto] set,  
 '*s*  $\rightarrow$  (*'s, 'e, 'd*) seqauto set] => bool **where**  
*NoCycles* F G =  
 ( $\forall S \in \text{Pow } (\bigcup A \in F. \text{States } A).$   
 $S \neq \{\} \longrightarrow (\exists s \in S. S \cap (\bigcup A \in \text{the } (G \ s). \text{States } A) = \{\}))$ )

**definition**

*IsCompFun* :: [(*'s, 'e, 'd*)seqauto] set,  
 '*s*  $\rightarrow$  (*'s, 'e, 'd*) seqauto set] => bool **where**  
*IsCompFun* F G = ((*dom* G = ( $\bigcup A \in F. \text{States } A$ ))  $\wedge$   
 ( $\bigcup (\text{ran } G) = (F - \{\text{Root } F \ G\})$ )  $\wedge$   
 (*RootEx* F G)  $\wedge$   
 (*OneAncestor* F G)  $\wedge$   
 (*NoCycles* F G))

**7.1.1 Well-formedness for the syntax of HA**

**definition**

*HierAuto* :: [*'d* data,  
 ((*'s, 'e, 'd*)seqauto) set,  
 '*e* set,  
 '*s*  $\rightarrow$  ((*'s, 'e, 'd*)seqauto) set]  
 => bool **where**  
*HierAuto* D F E G = (( $\bigcup A \in F. \text{SAEvents } A \subseteq E$ )  $\wedge$   
*MutuallyDistinct* F  $\wedge$   
*finite* F  $\wedge$   
*IsCompFun* F G)

**lemma** *HierAuto-EmptySet*:

((@*x*. True), {Abs-seqauto ({@*x*. True}, (@*x*. True), {}, {})}, {}, {}), {}), {}

```

    Map.empty ( @x. True  $\mapsto$  {}))  $\in$  {(D,F,E,G) | D F E G. HierAuto D F E G}
apply (unfold HierAuto-def IsCompFun-def Root-def RootEx-def MutuallyDistinct-def
        OneAncestor-def NoCycles-def)
apply auto
done

```

**definition**

```

hierauto =
  {(D,F,E,G) |
    (D::'d data)
    (F::('s,'e,'d) seqauto) set)
    (E::('e set))
    (G::('s  $\rightarrow$  (('s,'e,'d) seqauto) set)).
    HierAuto D F E G}

```

**typedef** ('s,'e,'d) hierauto =

```

  hierauto :: ('d data * ('s,'e,'d) seqauto set * 'e set * ('s  $\rightarrow$  ('s,'e,'d) seqauto
  set)) set
unfolding hierauto-def
apply (rule exI)
apply (rule HierAuto-EmptySet)
done

```

**definition**

```

SAs :: (('s,'e,'d) hierauto) => (('s,'e,'d) seqauto) set where
SAs = fst o snd o Rep-hierauto

```

**definition**

```

HAEvents :: (('s,'e,'d) hierauto) => ('e set) where
HAEvents = fst o snd o snd o Rep-hierauto

```

**definition**

```

CompFun :: (('s,'e,'d) hierauto) => ('s  $\rightarrow$  ('s,'e,'d) seqauto set) where
CompFun = (snd o snd o snd o Rep-hierauto)

```

**definition**

```

HASates :: (('s,'e,'d) hierauto) => ('s set) where
HASates HA = ( $\bigcup$  A  $\in$  (SAs HA). States A)

```

**definition**

```

HADelta :: (('s,'e,'d) hierauto) => (('s,'e,'d)trans) set where
HADelta HA = ( $\bigcup$  F  $\in$  (SAs HA). Delta F)

```

**definition**

```

HAINitValue :: (('s,'e,'d) hierauto) => 'd data where
HAINitValue == fst o Rep-hierauto

```

**definition**

```

HAINitStates :: (('s,'e,'d) hierauto) => 's set where

```

$HAINitStates HA == \bigcup A \in (SAs HA). \{ InitState A \}$

**definition**

$HARoot :: ((s,e,d) hierauto) => (s,e,d) seqauto$  **where**  
 $HARoot HA == Root (SAs HA) (CompFun HA)$

**definition**

$HAINitState :: ((s,e,d) hierauto) => s$  **where**  
 $HAINitState HA == InitState (HARoot HA)$

### 7.1.2 State successor function

**definition**

$Chi :: (s,e,d) hierauto => s$  **set where**  
 $Chi A == (\lambda S \in (HAsStates A) .$   
 $\{ S' . \exists SA \in (SAs A) . SA \in the ((CompFun A) S) \wedge S' \in States SA$   
 $\})$

**definition**

$ChiRel :: (s,e,d) hierauto => (s * s)$  **set where**  
 $ChiRel A == \{ (S,S') . S \in HAsStates A \wedge S' \in HAsStates A \wedge S' \in (Chi A) S \}$

**definition**

$ChiPlus :: (s,e,d) hierauto => (s * s)$  **set where**  
 $ChiPlus A == (ChiRel A) \hat{+}$

**definition**

$ChiStar :: (s,e,d) hierauto => (s * s)$  **set where**  
 $ChiStar A == (ChiRel A) \hat{*}$

**definition**

$HigherPriority :: [(s,e,d) hierauto,$   
 $(s,e,d) trans * (s,e,d) trans] => bool$  **where**  
 $HigherPriority A ==$   
 $\lambda (t,t') \in (HADelta A) \times (HADelta A).$   
 $(source t', source t) \in ChiPlus A$

### 7.1.3 Configurations

**definition**

$InitConf :: (s,e,d) hierauto => s$  **set where**  
 $InitConf A == (((((HAINitStates A) \times (HAINitStates A)) \cap (ChiRel A)) \hat{*})$   
 $\text{“ } \{ HAINitState A \}$

**definition**

*StepConf* :: [(*'s, 'e, 'd*)hierauto, *'s set*,  
 (*'s, 'e, 'd*)trans set] => *'s set* **where**

*StepConf* *A C TS* ==  
 (*C* - ((*ChiStar* *A*) “ (*Source* *TS*))) ∪  
 (*Target* *TS*) ∪  
 ((*ChiRel* *A*) “ (*Target* *TS*) ∩ (*HAIInitStates* *A*) ∪  
 (((*ChiRel* *A*) ∩ ((*HAIInitStates* *A*) × (*HAIInitStates* *A*))))<sup>+</sup>  
 “ (((*ChiRel* *A*) “ (*Target* *TS*) ∩ (*HAIInitStates* *A*)))

**7.2 Lemmas****lemma** *Rep-hierauto-tuple*:

*Rep-hierauto* *HA* = (*HAIInitValue* *HA*, *SAs* *HA*, *HAEvents* *HA*, *CompFun* *HA*)  
**by** (*unfold* *SAs-def* *HAEvents-def* *CompFun-def* *HAIInitValue-def*, *simp*)

**lemma** *Rep-hierauto-select*:

(*HAIInitValue* *HA*, *SAs* *HA*, *HAEvents* *HA*, *CompFun* *HA*): *hierauto*  
**by** (*rule* *Rep-hierauto-tuple* [*THEN* *subst*], *rule* *Rep-hierauto*)

**lemma** *HierAuto-select* [*simp*]:

*HierAuto* (*HAIInitValue* *HA*) (*SAs* *HA*) (*HAEvents* *HA*) (*CompFun* *HA*)  
**by** (*cut-tac* *Rep-hierauto-select*, *unfold* *hierauto-def*, *simp*)

**7.2.1 HAStates****lemma** *finite-HAStates* [*simp*]:

*finite* (*HAStates* *HA*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac* *Rep-hierauto-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold* *hierauto-def* *HierAuto-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*simp* *add*: *HAStates-def*)  
**apply** (*rule* *finite-UN-I*)  
**apply** *fast*

**apply** (*rule finite-States*)  
**done**

**lemma** *HASates-SA-mem*:  
 $\llbracket SA \in SAs\ A; S \in States\ SA \rrbracket \implies S \in HASates\ A$   
**by** (*unfold HASates-def, auto*)

**lemma** *ChiRel-HASates* [*simp*]:  
 $(a,b) \in ChiRel\ A \implies a \in HASates\ A$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiRel-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiRel-HASates2* [*simp*]:  
 $(a,b) \in ChiRel\ A \implies b \in HASates\ A$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiRel-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

### 7.2.2 *HAEvents*

**lemma** *HAEvents-SAEvents-SAs*:  
 $\bigcup (SAEvents\ ' (SAs\ HA)) \subseteq HAEvents\ HA$   
**apply** (*cut-tac Rep-hierauto-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold hierauto-def HierAuto-def*)  
**apply** *fast*  
**done**

### 7.2.3 *NoCycles*

**lemma** *NoCycles-EmptySet* [*simp*]:  
*NoCycles*  $\{\}$  *S*  
**by** (*unfold NoCycles-def, auto*)

**lemma** *NoCycles-HA* [*simp*]:  
*NoCycles* (*SAs HA*) (*CompFun HA*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac Rep-hierauto-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold hierauto-def HierAuto-def IsCompFun-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

### 7.2.4 *OneAncestor*

**lemma** *OneAncestor-HA* [*simp*]:  
*OneAncestor* (*SAs HA*) (*CompFun HA*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac Rep-hierauto-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold hierauto-def HierAuto-def IsCompFun-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

### 7.2.5 MutuallyDistinct

**lemma** *MutuallyDistinct-Single* [simp]:

*MutuallyDistinct* {SA}

**by** (*unfold MutuallyDistinct-def, auto*)

**lemma** *MutuallyDistinct-EmptySet* [simp]:

*MutuallyDistinct* {}

**by** (*unfold MutuallyDistinct-def, auto*)

**lemma** *MutuallyDistinct-Insert*:

$\llbracket \text{MutuallyDistinct } S; (\text{States } A) \cap (\bigcup B \in S. \text{States } B) = \{\} \rrbracket$   
 $\implies \text{MutuallyDistinct } (\text{insert } A S)$

**by** (*unfold MutuallyDistinct-def, safe, fast+*)

**lemma** *MutuallyDistinct-Union*:

$\llbracket \text{MutuallyDistinct } A; \text{MutuallyDistinct } B;$   
 $(\bigcup C \in A. \text{States } C) \cap (\bigcup C \in B. \text{States } C) = \{\} \rrbracket$   
 $\implies \text{MutuallyDistinct } (A \cup B)$

**by** (*unfold MutuallyDistinct-def, safe, blast+*)

**lemma** *MutuallyDistinct-HA* [simp]:

*MutuallyDistinct* (SAs HA)

**apply** (*cut-tac Rep-hierauto-select*)

**apply** (*unfold hierauto-def HierAuto-def IsCompFun-def*)

**apply** *auto*

**done**

### 7.2.6 RootEx

**lemma** *RootEx-Root* [simp]:

*RootEx F G*  $\implies$  *Root F G*  $\in F$

**apply** (*unfold RootEx-def Root-def*)

**apply** (*erule ex1E*)

**apply** (*erule conjE*)

**apply** (*rule someI2*)

**apply** *blast+*

**done**

**lemma** *RootEx-Root-ran* [simp]:

*RootEx F G*  $\implies$  *Root F G*  $\notin \bigcup (\text{ran } G)$

**apply** (*unfold RootEx-def Root-def*)

**apply** (*erule ex1E*)

**apply** (*erule conjE*)

**apply** (*rule someI2*)

**apply** *blast+*

**done**

**lemma** *RootEx-States-Subset* [simp]:

$(\text{RootEx } F G) \implies \text{States } (\text{Root } F G) \subseteq (\bigcup x \in F. \text{States } x)$

```

apply (unfold RootEx-def Root-def)
apply (erule ex1E)
apply (erule conjE)
apply (rule someI2)
apply fast
apply (unfold UNION-eq)
apply (simp add: subset-eq)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma RootEx-States-notdisjunct [simp]:
  RootEx F G  $\implies$  States (Root F G)  $\cap$  ( $\bigcup x \in F . States x$ )  $\neq$  {}
apply (frule RootEx-States-Subset)
apply (case-tac States (Root F G)={})
prefer 2
apply fast
apply simp
done

```

```

lemma Root-neq-SA [simp]:
  [ $RootEx F G; (\bigcup x \in F . States x) \cap States SA = \{\}$ ]  $\implies$  Root F G  $\neq$  SA
apply (rule SA-States-disjunct)
apply (frule RootEx-States-Subset)
apply fast
done

```

```

lemma RootEx-HA [simp]:
  RootEx (SAs HA) (CompFun HA)
apply (cut-tac Rep-hierauto-select)
apply (unfold hierauto-def HierAuto-def IsCompFun-def)
apply fast
done

```

### 7.2.7 HARoot

```

lemma HARoot-SAs [simp]:
  (HARoot HA)  $\in$  SAs HA
apply (unfold HARoot-def)
apply (cut-tac Rep-hierauto-select)
apply (unfold hierauto-def HierAuto-def)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma States-HARoot-HAStates:
  States (HARoot HA)  $\subseteq$  HAStates HA
apply (unfold HAStates-def)
apply auto
apply (rule-tac x=HARoot HA in bexI)
apply auto

```

**done**

**lemma** *SAEvents-HARoot-HAEvents:*

$SAEvents (HARoot HA) \subseteq HAEvents HA$   
**apply** (*cut-tac Rep-hierauto-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold hierauto-def HierAuto-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac S*)  
**apply** (*unfold UNION-eq*)  
**apply** (*simp add: subset-eq*)  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=S in allE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *HARoot-ran-CompFun:*

$HARoot HA \notin Union (ran (CompFun HA))$   
**apply** (*unfold HARoot-def*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac Rep-hierauto-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold IsCompFun-def hierauto-def HierAuto-def*)  
**apply** *fast*  
**done**

**lemma** *HARoot-ran-CompFun2:*

$S \in ran (CompFun HA) \longrightarrow HARoot HA \notin S$   
**apply** (*unfold HARoot-def*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac Rep-hierauto-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold IsCompFun-def hierauto-def HierAuto-def*)  
**apply** *fast*  
**done**

### 7.2.8 *CompFun*

**lemma** *IsCompFun-HA [simp]:*

$IsCompFun (SAs HA) (CompFun HA)$   
**apply** (*cut-tac Rep-hierauto-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold hierauto-def HierAuto-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *dom-CompFun [simp]:*

$dom (CompFun HA) = HAStates HA$   
**apply** (*cut-tac HA=HA in IsCompFun-HA*)  
**apply** (*unfold IsCompFun-def HAStates-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ran-CompFun [simp]:*

$Union (ran (CompFun HA)) = ((SAs HA) - \{Root (SAs HA)(CompFun HA)\})$   
**apply** (*cut-tac HA=HA in IsCompFun-HA*)

**apply** (*unfold IsCompFun-def*)  
**apply fast**  
**done**

**lemma** *ran-CompFun-subseteq*:  
 $Union (ran (CompFun HA)) \subseteq (SAs HA)$   
**apply** (*cut-tac HA=HA in IsCompFun-HA*)  
**apply** (*unfold IsCompFun-def*)  
**apply fast**  
**done**

**lemma** *ran-CompFun-is-not-SA*:  
 $\neg Sas \subseteq (SAs HA) \implies Sas \notin (ran (CompFun HA))$   
**apply** (*cut-tac HA=HA in IsCompFun-HA*)  
**apply** (*unfold IsCompFun-def*)  
**apply fast**  
**done**

**lemma** *HASates-HARoot-CompFun [simp]*:  
 $S \in HASates HA \implies HARoot HA \notin the (CompFun HA S)$   
**apply** (*rule ran-dom-the*)  
**back**  
**apply** (*simp add: HARoot-ran-CompFun2 HARoot-def HASates-def*)  
**done**

**lemma** *HASates-CompFun-SAs*:  
 $S \in HASates A \implies the (CompFun A S) \subseteq SAs A$   
**apply auto**  
**apply** (*rename-tac T*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac HA=A in ran-CompFun*)  
**apply** (*erule equalityE*)  
**apply** (*erule-tac c=T in subsetCE*)  
**apply** (*erule ran-dom-the*)  
**apply auto**  
**done**

**lemma** *HASates-CompFun-notmem [simp]*:  
 $\llbracket S \in HASates A; SA \in the (CompFun A S) \rrbracket \implies S \notin States SA$   
**apply** (*unfold HASates-def*)  
**apply auto**  
**apply** (*rename-tac T*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac HA=A in MutuallyDistinct-HA*)  
**apply** (*unfold MutuallyDistinct-def*)  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=SA in ballE*)  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=T in ballE*)  
**apply auto**  
**prefer 2**  
**apply** (*cut-tac A=A and S=S in HASates-CompFun-SAs*)  
**apply** (*unfold HASates-def*)

```

apply simp
apply fast
apply fast
apply (cut-tac  $HA=A$  in NoCycles-HA)
apply (unfold NoCycles-def)
apply (erule-tac  $x=\{S\}$  in ballE)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** *CompFun-Int-disjoint*:

$\llbracket S \neq T; S \in HAStates\ A; T \in HAStates\ A \rrbracket \implies the\ (CompFun\ A\ T) \cap the\ (CompFun\ A\ S) = \{\}$

```

apply auto
apply (rename-tac  $U$ )
apply (cut-tac  $HA=A$  in OneAncestor-HA)
apply (unfold OneAncestor-def)
apply (erule-tac  $x=U$  in ballE)
prefer 2
apply simp
apply (fold HARoot-def)
apply (frule HAStates-HARoot-CompFun)
apply simp
apply (frule HAStates-CompFun-SAs)
apply auto
apply (erule-tac  $x=S$  in allE)
apply (erule-tac  $x=T$  in allE)
apply auto
apply (cut-tac  $HA=A$  in NoCycles-HA)
apply (unfold NoCycles-def)
apply (simp only: HAStates-def)
apply safe
apply (erule-tac  $x=\{S\}$  in ballE)
apply simp
apply fast
apply simp
apply (cut-tac  $HA=A$  in NoCycles-HA)
apply (unfold NoCycles-def)
apply (simp only: HAStates-def)
apply safe
apply (erule-tac  $x=\{T\}$  in ballE)
apply simp
apply fast
apply simp
done

```

### 7.2.9 SAs

**lemma** *finite-SAs* [*simp*]:

*finite* (*SAs*  $HA$ )

**apply** (*cut-tac Rep-hierauto-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold hierauto-def HierAuto-def*)  
**apply fast**  
**done**

**lemma** *HASates-SAs-disjunct*:  
 $HASates HA1 \cap HASates HA2 = \{\} \implies SAs HA1 \cap SAs HA2 = \{\}$   
**apply** (*unfold UNION-eq HASates-def Int-def*)  
**apply auto**  
**apply** (*rename-tac SA*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac SA=SA in EX-State-SA*)  
**apply** (*erule exE*)  
**apply auto**  
**done**

**lemma** *HASates-CompFun-SAs-mem* [*simp*]:  
 $\llbracket S \in HASates A; T \in the (CompFun A S) \rrbracket \implies T \in SAs A$   
**apply** (*cut-tac A=A and S=S in HASates-CompFun-SAs*)  
**apply auto**  
**done**

**lemma** *SAs-States-HASates*:  
 $SA \in SAs A \implies States SA \subseteq HASates A$   
**by** (*unfold HASates-def, auto*)

### 7.2.10 *HAINitState*

**lemma** *HAINitState-HARoot* [*simp*]:  
 $HAINitState A \in States (HARoot A)$   
**by** (*unfold HAINitState-def, auto*)

**lemma** *HAINitState-HARoot2* [*simp*]:  
 $HAINitState A \in States (Root (SAs A) (CompFun A))$   
**by** (*fold HARoot-def, simp*)

**lemma** *HAINitStates-HASates* [*simp*]:  
 $HAINitStates A \subseteq HASates A$   
**apply** (*unfold HAINitStates-def HASates-def*)  
**apply auto**  
**done**

**lemma** *HAINitStates-HASates2* [*simp*]:  
 $S \in HAINitStates A \implies S \in HASates A$   
**apply** (*cut-tac A=A in HAINitStates-HASates*)  
**apply fast**  
**done**

**lemma** *HAINitState-HASates* [*simp*]:  
 $HAINitState A \in HASates A$

```

apply (unfold HAStates-def)
apply auto
apply (rule-tac x=HARoot A in beXI)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma HAINitState-HAINitStates [simp]:
  HAINitState A ∈ HAINitStates A
by (unfold HAINitStates-def HAINitState-def, auto)

```

```

lemma CompFun-HAINitStates-HAStates [simp]:
   $\llbracket S \in HAStates A; SA \in the (CompFun A S) \rrbracket \implies (InitState SA) \in HAINitStates A$ 
apply (unfold HAINitStates-def)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma CompFun-HAINitState-HAINitStates [simp]:
   $\llbracket SA \in the (CompFun A (HAINitState A)) \rrbracket \implies (InitState SA) \in HAINitStates A$ 
apply (unfold HAINitStates-def)
apply auto
apply (rule-tac x=SA in beXI)
apply auto
apply (cut-tac A=A and S=HAINitState A in HAStates-CompFun-SAs)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma HAINitState-notmem-States [simp]:
   $\llbracket S \in HAStates A; SA \in the (CompFun A S) \rrbracket \implies HAINitState A \notin States SA$ 
apply (cut-tac HA=A in MutuallyDistinct-HA)
apply (unfold MutuallyDistinct-def)
apply (erule-tac x=SA in ballE)
apply (erule-tac x=HARoot A in ballE)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma InitState-notmem-States [simp]:
   $\llbracket S \in HAStates A; SA \in the (CompFun A S);$ 
   $T \in HAINitStates A; T \neq InitState SA \rrbracket$ 
   $\implies T \notin States SA$ 
apply (unfold HAINitStates-def)
apply auto
apply (rename-tac SAA)
apply (cut-tac HA=A in MutuallyDistinct-HA)
apply (unfold MutuallyDistinct-def)
apply (erule-tac x=SA in ballE)
apply (erule-tac x=SAA in ballE)

```

**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *InitState-States-notmem* [*simp*]:  
  $\llbracket B \in \text{SAs } A; C \in \text{SAs } A; B \neq C \rrbracket \implies \text{InitState } B \notin \text{States } C$   
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*cut-tac*  $HA=A$  **in** *MutuallyDistinct-HA*)  
**apply** (*unfold* *MutuallyDistinct-def*)  
**apply** *force*  
**done**

**lemma** *OneHAIInitState-SASates*:  
  $\llbracket S \in \text{HAIInitStates } A; T \in \text{HAIInitStates } A;$   
  $S \in \text{States } SA; T \in \text{States } SA; SA \in \text{SAs } A \rrbracket \implies$   
  $S = T$   
**apply** (*unfold* *HAIInitStates-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac*  $AA$   $AAA$ )  
**apply** (*case-tac*  $AA = SA$ )  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*case-tac*  $AAA = SA$ )  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

### 7.2.11 *Chi*

**lemma** *HARootStates-notmem-Chi* [*simp*]:  
  $\llbracket S \in \text{HASates } A; T \in \text{States } (\text{HARoot } A) \rrbracket \implies T \notin \text{Chi } A S$   
**apply** (*unfold* *Chi-def* *restrict-def*, *auto*)  
**apply** (*rename-tac*  $SA$ )  
**apply** (*cut-tac*  $HA=A$  **in** *MutuallyDistinct-HA*)  
**apply** (*unfold* *MutuallyDistinct-def*)  
**apply** (*erule-tac*  $x=\text{HARoot } A$  **in** *ballE*)  
**apply** (*erule-tac*  $x=SA$  **in** *ballE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *SASates-notmem-Chi* [*simp*]:  
  $\llbracket S \in \text{States } SA; T \in \text{States } SA;$   
  $SA \in \text{SAs } A \rrbracket \implies T \notin \text{Chi } A S$   
**apply** (*unfold* *Chi-def* *restrict-def*, *auto*)  
**apply** (*rename-tac*  $SAA$ )  
**apply** (*cut-tac*  $HA=A$  **in** *MutuallyDistinct-HA*)  
**apply** (*unfold* *MutuallyDistinct-def*)  
**apply** (*erule-tac*  $x=SAA$  **in** *ballE*)  
**apply** (*erule-tac*  $x=SA$  **in** *ballE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*unfold* *HASates-def*)  
**apply** *auto*

**done**

**lemma** *HASInitState-notmem-Chi* [simp]:

$S \in HASStates\ A \implies HASInitState\ A \notin Chi\ A\ S$   
**by** (*unfold Chi-def restrict-def, auto*)

**lemma** *Chi-HASStates* [simp]:

$T \in HASStates\ A \implies (Chi\ A\ T) \subseteq HASStates\ A$   
**apply** (*unfold Chi-def restrict-def*)  
**apply** (*auto*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac A=A and S=T in HASStates-CompFun-SAs*)  
**apply** (*unfold HASStates-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *Chi-HASStates-Self* [simp]:

$s \in HASStates\ a \implies s \notin (Chi\ a\ s)$   
**by** (*unfold Chi-def restrict-def, auto*)

**lemma** *ChiRel-HASStates-Self* [simp]:

$(s,s) \notin (ChiRel\ a)$   
**by** (*unfold ChiRel-def, auto*)

**lemma** *HASStates-Chi-NoCycles*:

$\llbracket s \in HASStates\ a; t \in HASStates\ a; s \in Chi\ a\ t \rrbracket \implies t \notin Chi\ a\ s$   
**apply** (*unfold Chi-def restrict-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*cut-tac HA=a in NoCycles-HA*)  
**apply** (*unfold NoCycles-def*)  
**apply** (*erule-tac x={s,t} in ballE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *HASStates-Chi-NoCycles-trans*:

$\llbracket s \in HASStates\ a; t \in HASStates\ a; u \in HASStates\ a;$   
 $t \in Chi\ a\ s; u \in Chi\ a\ t \rrbracket \implies s \notin Chi\ a\ u$   
**apply** (*unfold Chi-def restrict-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*cut-tac HA=a in NoCycles-HA*)  
**apply** (*unfold NoCycles-def*)  
**apply** (*erule-tac x={s,t,u} in ballE*)  
**prefer** 2  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*unfold HASStates-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *Chi-range-disjoint*:

$\llbracket S \neq T; T \in HASStates\ A; S \in HASStates\ A; U \in Chi\ A\ S \rrbracket \implies U \notin Chi\ A\ T$

```

apply (frule CompFun-Int-disjoint)
apply auto
apply (unfold Chi-def restrict-def)
apply auto
apply (rename-tac SA SAA)
apply (cut-tac HA=A in MutuallyDistinct-HA)
apply (unfold MutuallyDistinct-def)
apply (erule-tac x=SA in ballE)
apply (erule-tac x=SAA in ballE)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma SASates-Chi-trans [rule-format]:
  [|  $U \in \text{Chi } A \ T; S \in \text{Chi } A \ U; T \in \text{States } SA;$ 
     $SA \in \text{SAs } A; U \in \text{HASates } A$  |]  $\implies S \notin \text{States } SA$ 
apply (frule HASates-SA-mem)
apply auto
apply (unfold Chi-def restrict-def)
apply auto
apply (rename-tac SAA SAAA)
apply (cut-tac HA=A in NoCycles-HA)
apply (unfold NoCycles-def)
apply (erule-tac x={U,T} in ballE)
prefer 2
apply (simp only: HASates-def)
apply auto
apply (cut-tac HA=A in MutuallyDistinct-HA)
apply (unfold MutuallyDistinct-def)
apply (rotate-tac -1)
apply (erule-tac x=SA in ballE)
apply (rotate-tac -1)
apply (erule-tac x=SAAA in ballE)
apply auto
done

```

### 7.2.12 *ChiRel*

```

lemma finite-ChiRel [simp]:
  finite (ChiRel A)
apply (rule-tac B=HASates A  $\times$  HASates A in finite-subset)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma ChiRel-HASates-subseteq [simp]:
   $(\text{ChiRel } A) \subseteq (\text{HASates } A \times \text{HASates } A)$ 
apply (unfold ChiRel-def Chi-def restrict-def)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** *ChiRel-CompFun*:  
 $s \in \text{HAStates } a \implies \text{ChiRel } a \text{ “ } \{s\} = (\bigcup x \in \text{the } (\text{CompFun } a \ s)). \text{ States } x$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiRel-def Chi-def restrict-def Image-def*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*frule HAStates-CompFun-SAs-mem*)  
**apply** *fast*  
**apply** (*unfold HAStates-def*)  
**apply** *fast*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiRel-HARoot*:  
 $\llbracket (x,y) \in \text{ChiRel } A \rrbracket \implies y \notin \text{States } (\text{HARoot } A)$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiRel-def Chi-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac SA*)  
**apply** (*frule HAStates-HARoot-CompFun*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac HA=A in MutuallyDistinct-HA*)  
**apply** (*unfold MutuallyDistinct-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=SA in ballE*)  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=HARoot A in ballE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *HAStates-CompFun-States-ChiRel*:  
 $S \in \text{HAStates } A \implies \bigcup (\text{States ‘ the } (\text{CompFun } A \ S)) = \text{ChiRel } A \text{ “ } \{S\}$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiRel-def Chi-def restrict-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*drule HAStates-CompFun-SAs*)  
**apply** (*subst HAStates-def*)  
**apply** *fast*  
**done**

**lemma** *HARoot-InitState-notmem-Range-ChiRel* [*simp*]:  
 $\text{HARoot } A \notin \text{Range } (\text{ChiRel } A)$   
**by** (*unfold ChiRel-def, auto*)

**lemma** *HARoot-InitState-notmem-Range-ChiRel2* [*simp*]:  
 $(S, \text{HARoot } A) \notin (\text{ChiRel } A)$   
**by** (*unfold ChiRel-def, auto*)

**lemma** *ChiRel-OneAncestor-notmem*:  
 $\llbracket S \neq T; (S,U) \in \text{ChiRel } A \rrbracket \implies (T,U) \notin \text{ChiRel } A$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiRel-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*simp only: Chi-range-disjoint*)  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiRel-OneAncestor*:  
 $\llbracket (S1,U) \in ChiRel\ A; (S2,U) \in ChiRel\ A \rrbracket \implies S1 = S2$   
**apply** (*rule notnotD, rule notI*)  
**apply** (*simp add: ChiRel-OneAncestor-notmem*)  
**done**

**lemma** *CompFun-ChiRel*:  
 $\llbracket S1 \in HStates\ A; SA \in the\ (CompFun\ A\ S1);$   
 $S2 \in States\ SA \rrbracket \implies (S1,S2) \in ChiRel\ A$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiRel-def Chi-def restrict-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*cut-tac A=A and S=S1 in HStates-CompFun-SAs*)  
**apply** (*unfold HStates-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *CompFun-ChiRel2*:  
 $\llbracket (S,T) \in ChiRel\ A; T \in States\ SA; SA \in SAs\ A \rrbracket \implies SA \in the\ (CompFun\ A\ S)$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiRel-def Chi-def restrict-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac SAA*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac HA=A in MutuallyDistinct-HA*)  
**apply** (*unfold MutuallyDistinct-def*)  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=SA in ballE*)  
**apply** (*rotate-tac -1*)  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=SAA in ballE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiRel-HStates-NoCycles*:  
 $(s,t) \in (ChiRel\ a) \implies (t,s) \notin (ChiRel\ a)$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiRel-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*frule HStates-Chi-NoCycles*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *HStates-ChiRel-NoCycles-trans*:  
 $\llbracket (s,t) \in (ChiRel\ a); (t,u) \in (ChiRel\ a) \rrbracket \implies (u,s) \notin (ChiRel\ a)$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiRel-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*frule HStates-Chi-NoCycles-trans*)  
**apply** *fast*  
**back**  
**back**  
**prefer** 3  
**apply** *fast*  
**apply** *auto*

**done**

**lemma** *SASates-ChiRel*:

$\llbracket S \in \text{States } SA; T \in \text{States } SA;$   
 $SA \in \text{SAs } A \rrbracket \implies (S, T) \notin (\text{ChiRel } A)$   
**by** (*unfold ChiRel-def, auto*)

**lemma** *ChiRel-SA-OneAncestor*:

$\llbracket (S, T) \in \text{ChiRel } A; T \in \text{States } SA;$   
 $U \in \text{States } SA; SA \in \text{SAs } A \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(S, U) \in \text{ChiRel } A$   
**apply** (*frule CompFun-ChiRel2*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rule CompFun-ChiRel*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiRel-OneAncestor2*:

$\llbracket S \in \text{HASates } A; S \notin \text{States } (\text{HARoot } A) \rrbracket \implies$   
 $\exists! T. (T, S) \in \text{ChiRel } A$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiRel-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**prefer** 2  
**apply** (*rename-tac T U*)  
**prefer** 2  
**apply** (*unfold Chi-def restrict-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**prefer** 2  
**apply** (*rename-tac SA SAA*)  
**prefer** 2  
**apply** (*cut-tac HA=A in OneAncestor-HA*)  
**apply** (*unfold OneAncestor-def*)  
**apply** (*fold HARoot-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*simp cong: rev-conj-cong*)  
**apply** (*unfold HASates-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac SA*)  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=SA in ballE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*case-tac T = U*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*frule CompFun-Int-disjoint*)  
**apply** (*unfold HASates-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*case-tac SA=SAA*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*cut-tac HA=A in MutuallyDistinct-HA*)  
**apply** (*unfold MutuallyDistinct-def*)

```

apply (erule-tac  $x=SAA$  in ballE)
apply (erule-tac  $x=SA$  in ballE)
apply auto
apply (cut-tac  $S=T$  and  $A=A$  in HASates-CompFun-SAs)
apply (unfold HASates-def)
apply fast
apply fast
apply (cut-tac  $S=U$  and  $A=A$  in HASates-CompFun-SAs)
apply (unfold HASates-def)
apply fast
apply fast
done

```

```

lemma HARootStates-notmem-Range-ChiRel [simp]:
   $S \in \text{States } (HARoot A) \implies S \notin \text{Range } (ChiRel A)$ 
by (unfold ChiRel-def, auto)

```

```

lemma ChiRel-int-disjoint:
   $S \neq T \implies (ChiRel A \text{ `` } \{S\}) \cap (ChiRel A \text{ `` } \{T\}) = \{\}$ 
apply (unfold ChiRel-def)
apply auto
apply (simp only: Chi-range-disjoint)
done

```

```

lemma SASates-ChiRel-trans [rule-format]:
   $\llbracket (S,U) \in (ChiRel A); (U,T) \in ChiRel A; S \in \text{States } SA; SA \in SAs A \rrbracket \implies T \notin \text{States } SA$ 
apply auto
apply (unfold ChiRel-def)
apply auto
apply (frule SASates-Chi-trans)
back
apply fast+
done

```

```

lemma HAINitStates-InitState-trancl:
   $\llbracket S \in HAINitStates (HA ST); A \in \text{the } (CompFun (HA ST) S) \rrbracket \implies$ 
   $(S, \text{InitState } A) \in (ChiRel (HA ST) \cap HAINitStates (HA ST) \times HAINitStates$ 
   $(HA ST))^+$ 
apply (case-tac  $S \in HASates (HA ST)$ )
apply (frule CompFun-ChiRel)
apply fast+
apply (rule InitState-States)
apply auto
apply (rule r-into-trancl')
apply auto
apply (rule CompFun-HAINitStates-HASates)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** *HAIInitStates-InitState-trancl2*:  
 $\llbracket S \in \text{HAStates } (HA \ ST); A \in \text{the } (\text{CompFun } (HA \ ST) \ S);$   
 $(x, S) \in (\text{ChiRel } (HA \ ST) \cap \text{HAIInitStates } (HA \ ST) \times \text{HAIInitStates } (HA \ ST))^+$   
 $\rrbracket$   
 $\implies (x, \text{InitState } A) \in (\text{ChiRel } (HA \ ST) \cap \text{HAIInitStates } (HA \ ST) \times \text{HAIInitStates } (HA \ ST))^+$   
**apply** (*rule-tac a=x and b=S and r=ChiRel (HA ST)  $\cap$  HAIInitStates (HA ST)  $\times$  HAIInitStates (HA ST) in converse-trancl-induct*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**prefer** 2  
**apply** (*rename-tac T U*)  
**prefer** 2  
**apply** (*case-tac S  $\in$  HAStates (HA ST)*)  
**apply** (*frule CompFun-ChiRel*)  
**apply** *fast*  
**apply** (*rule InitState-States*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*rule trancl-trans [of - S]*)  
**apply** (*rule r-into-trancl'*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rule r-into-trancl'*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rule CompFun-HAIInitStates-HAStates*)  
**prefer** 2  
**apply** *fast*  
**apply** (*cut-tac A=HA ST in HAIInitStates-HAStates, fast*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac y = U in trancl-trans*)  
**apply** (*rule r-into-trancl'*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

### 7.2.13 *ChiPlus*

**lemma** *ChiPlus-ChiRel [simp]*:  
 $(S, T) \in \text{ChiRel } A \implies (S, T) \in \text{ChiPlus } A$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** (*frule r-into-trancl*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiPlus-HAStates [simp]*:  
 $(\text{ChiPlus } A) \subseteq (\text{HAStates } A \times \text{HAStates } A)$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** (*rule trancl-subset-Sigma*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiPlus-subset-States*:

$ChiPlus\ a\ \{\!\!\{t\}\!\!\} \subseteq \bigcup (States\ \{\!\!\{SAs\ a\}\!\!\})$   
**apply** (*cut-tac A=a in ChiPlus-HAStates*)  
**apply** (*unfold HAStates-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *finite-ChiPlus [simp]*:  
 $finite\ (ChiPlus\ A)$   
**apply** (*rule-tac B=HAStates A × HAStates A in finite-subset*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiPlus-OneAncestor*:  
 $\llbracket S \in HAStates\ A; S \notin States\ (HARoot\ A) \rrbracket \implies$   
 $\exists T. (T, S) \in ChiPlus\ A$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** (*frule ChiRel-OneAncestor2*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiPlus-HAStates-Left*:  
 $(S, T) \in ChiPlus\ A \implies S \in HAStates\ A$   
**apply** (*cut-tac A=A in ChiPlus-HAStates*)  
**apply** (*unfold HAStates-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiPlus-HAStates-Right*:  
 $(S, T) \in ChiPlus\ A \implies T \in HAStates\ A$   
**apply** (*cut-tac A=A in ChiPlus-HAStates*)  
**apply** (*unfold HAStates-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiPlus-ChiRel-int [rule-format]*:  
 $\llbracket (T, S) \in (ChiPlus\ A) \rrbracket \implies (ChiPlus\ A\ \{\!\!\{T\}\!\!\}) \cap (ChiRel\ A\ \{\!\!\{S\}\!\!\}) = (ChiRel\ A\ \{\!\!\{S\}\!\!\})$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac a=T and b=S and r=(ChiRel A) in converse-trancl-induct*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiPlus-ChiPlus-int [rule-format]*:  
 $\llbracket (T, S) \in (ChiPlus\ A) \rrbracket \implies (ChiPlus\ A\ \{\!\!\{T\}\!\!\}) \cap (ChiPlus\ A\ \{\!\!\{S\}\!\!\}) = (ChiPlus\ A\ \{\!\!\{S\}\!\!\})$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac a=T and b=S and r=(ChiRel A) in converse-trancl-induct*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiPlus-ChiRel-NoCycle-1* [rule-format]:  
 $\llbracket (T,S) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(\text{insert } S (\text{insert } T (\{U. (T,U) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \wedge (U,S) \in \text{ChiPlus } A\}))) \cap (\text{ChiRel } A \text{ “ } \{T\} \neq \{ \})$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac a=T and b=S and r=(ChiRel A) in converse-trancl-induct*)  
**apply** (*unfold Image-def Int-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiPlus-ChiRel-NoCycle-2* [rule-format]:  
 $\llbracket (T,S) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \rrbracket \implies (S,T) \in (\text{ChiRel } A) \longrightarrow$   
 $(\text{insert } S (\text{insert } T (\{U. (T,U) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \wedge (U,S) \in \text{ChiPlus } A\}))) \cap (\text{ChiRel } A \text{ “ } \{S\} \neq \{ \})$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac a=T and b=S and r=(ChiRel A) in converse-trancl-induct*)  
**apply** (*unfold Image-def Int-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiPlus-ChiRel-NoCycle-3* [rule-format]:  
 $\llbracket (T,S) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \rrbracket \implies (S,T) \in (\text{ChiRel } A) \longrightarrow (T,U) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \longrightarrow (U,$   
 $S) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \longrightarrow$   
 $(\text{insert } S (\text{insert } T (\{U. (T,U) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \wedge (U,S) \in \text{ChiPlus } A\}))) \cap (\text{ChiRel } A \text{ “ } \{U\} \neq \{ \})$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac a=T and b=S and r=(ChiRel A) in trancl-induct*)  
**apply** (*unfold Image-def Int-def, simp*)  
**apply** (*rename-tac V*)  
**prefer** 2  
**apply** (*rename-tac V W*)  
**prefer** 2  
**apply** (*simp, safe*)  
**apply** (*simp only: ChiRel-HAStates-NoCycles*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*case-tac (U,W) \in (ChiRel A), fast, rotate-tac 5, frule tranclD3, fast, blast*  
*intro: trancl-into-trancl*)  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiPlus-ChiRel-NoCycle-4* [rule-format]:  
 $\llbracket (T,S) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \rrbracket \implies (S,T) \in (\text{ChiRel } A) \longrightarrow ((\text{ChiPlus } A \text{ “ } \{T\}) \cap (\text{ChiRel } A \text{ “ } \{S\})) \neq \{ \}$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac a=T and b=S and r=(ChiRel A) in trancl-induct*)  
**apply** (*unfold Image-def Int-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*simp only: ChiRel-HAStates-NoCycles*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac x=T in exI*)

```

apply simp
apply (rule-tac  $x=T$  in exI)
apply simp
done

```

```

lemma ChiRel-ChiPlus-NoCycles:
   $(S,T) \in (\text{ChiRel } A) \implies (T,S) \notin (\text{ChiPlus } A)$ 
apply (cut-tac  $HA=A$  in NoCycles-HA)
apply (unfold NoCycles-def)
apply (erule-tac  $x=insert\ S\ (insert\ T\ (\{U.\ (T,U) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \wedge (U,S) \in \text{ChiPlus } A\}))$  in ballE)
prefer 2
apply (simp add: ChiPlus-subset-States)
apply (cut-tac  $A=A$  in ChiPlus-HAStates)
apply (unfold HAStates-def)
apply auto
apply (frule ChiPlus-ChiRel-NoCycle-2)
apply fast
apply (simp add: ChiRel-CompFun)
apply (frule ChiPlus-ChiRel-NoCycle-1)
apply (simp add: ChiRel-CompFun)
apply (frule ChiPlus-ChiRel-NoCycle-3)
apply fast
apply fast
back
apply fast
apply (rename-tac  $V$ )
apply (case-tac  $V \in \text{HAStates } A$ )
apply (simp add: ChiRel-CompFun)
apply (simp only: ChiPlus-HAStates-Right)
apply fast
done

```

```

lemma ChiPlus-ChiPlus-NoCycles:
   $(S,T) \in (\text{ChiPlus } A) \implies (T,S) \notin (\text{ChiPlus } A)$ 
apply (unfold ChiPlus-def)
apply (rule-tac  $a=S$  and  $b=T$  and  $r=(\text{ChiRel } A)$  in trancl-induct)
apply fast
apply (frule ChiRel-ChiPlus-NoCycles)
apply (auto intro: trancl-into-trancl2 simp add: ChiPlus-def)
done

```

```

lemma ChiPlus-NoCycles [rule-format]:
   $(S,T) \in (\text{ChiPlus } A) \implies S \neq T$ 
apply (frule ChiPlus-ChiPlus-NoCycles)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma ChiPlus-NoCycles-2 [simp]:

```

$(S,S) \notin (\text{ChiPlus } A)$   
**apply** (*rule notI*)  
**apply** (*frule ChiPlus-NoCycles*)  
**apply** *fast*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiPlus-ChiPlus-NoCycles-2*:  
 $\llbracket (S,U) \in \text{ChiPlus } A; (U,T) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \rrbracket \implies (T,S) \notin \text{ChiPlus } A$   
**apply** (*rule ChiPlus-ChiPlus-NoCycles*)  
**apply** (*auto intro: trancl-trans simp add: ChiPlus-def*)  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiRel-ChiPlus-trans*:  
 $\llbracket (U,S) \in \text{ChiPlus } A; (S,T) \in \text{ChiRel } A \rrbracket \implies (U,T) \in \text{ChiPlus } A$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiRel-ChiPlus-trans2*:  
 $\llbracket (U,S) \in \text{ChiRel } A; (S,T) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \rrbracket \implies (U,T) \in \text{ChiPlus } A$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiPlus-ChiRel-Ex* [*rule-format*]:  
 $\llbracket (S,T) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \rrbracket \implies (S,T) \notin \text{ChiRel } A \longrightarrow$   
 $(\exists U. (S,U) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \wedge (U,T) \in \text{ChiRel } A)$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac a=S and b=T and r=(ChiRel A) in converse-trancl-induct*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac U*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac x=U in exI*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiPlus-ChiRel-Ex2* [*rule-format*]:  
 $\llbracket (S,T) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \rrbracket \implies (S,T) \notin \text{ChiRel } A \longrightarrow$   
 $(\exists U. (S,U) \in \text{ChiRel } A \wedge (U,T) \in \text{ChiPlus } A)$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac a=S and b=T and r=(ChiRel A) in converse-trancl-induct*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *HARootStates-Range-ChiPlus* [*simp*]:  
 $\llbracket S \in \text{States } (\text{HARoot } A) \rrbracket \implies S \notin \text{Range } (\text{ChiPlus } A)$   
**by** (*unfold ChiPlus-def, auto*)

**lemma** *HARootStates-Range-ChiPlus2* [*simp*]:  
 $\llbracket S \in \text{States } (\text{HARoot } A) \rrbracket \implies (x,S) \notin (\text{ChiPlus } A)$

by (frule HARootStates-Range-ChiPlus, unfold Domain-converse [symmetric], fast)

**lemma** *SASates-ChiPlus-ChiRel-NoCycle-1* [rule-format]:

$\llbracket (S,U) \in \text{ChiPlus } A; SA \in \text{SAs } A \rrbracket \implies (U,T) \in (\text{ChiRel } A) \longrightarrow S \in \text{States } SA$   
 $\longrightarrow T \in \text{States } SA \longrightarrow$   
 $(\text{insert } S (\text{insert } U (\{V. (S,V) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \wedge (V,U) \in \text{ChiPlus } A\}))) \cap (\text{ChiRel } A \text{ “ } \{U\} \neq \{ \})$   
**apply** (unfold ChiPlus-def)  
**apply** (rule-tac a=S and b=U and r=(ChiRel A) in converse-trancl-induct)  
**apply** (simp, safe)  
**apply** (simp only: SASates-ChiRel-trans)  
**apply** (simp add:ChiRel-CompFun)  
**apply** safe  
**apply** (erule-tac x=SA in ballE)  
**apply** (simp add: CompFun-ChiRel2)+  
**apply** (simp add:Int-def, fast)  
**apply** auto  
**apply** (fold ChiPlus-def)  
**apply** (rename-tac W)  
**apply** (frule-tac U=U and T=U and S=W in ChiRel-ChiPlus-trans2)  
**apply** auto  
**done**

**lemma** *SASates-ChiPlus-ChiRel-NoCycle-2* [rule-format]:

$\llbracket (S,U) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \rrbracket \implies (U,T) \in (\text{ChiRel } A) \longrightarrow$   
 $(\text{insert } S (\text{insert } U (\{V. (S,V) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \wedge (V,U) \in \text{ChiPlus } A\}))) \cap$   
 $(\text{ChiRel } A \text{ “ } \{S\} \neq \{ \})$   
**apply** (unfold ChiPlus-def)  
**apply** (rule-tac a=S and b=U and r=(ChiRel A) in converse-trancl-induct)  
**apply** (unfold Image-def Int-def)  
**apply** auto  
**done**

**lemma** *SASates-ChiPlus-ChiRel-NoCycle-3* [rule-format]:

$\llbracket (S,U) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \rrbracket \implies (U,T) \in (\text{ChiRel } A) \longrightarrow (S,s) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \longrightarrow$   
 $(s,U) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \longrightarrow$   
 $(\text{insert } S (\text{insert } U (\{V. (S,V) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \wedge (V,U) \in \text{ChiPlus } A\}))) \cap$   
 $(\text{ChiRel } A \text{ “ } \{s\} \neq \{ \})$   
**apply** (unfold ChiPlus-def)  
**apply** (rule-tac a=S and b=U and r=(ChiRel A) in trancl-induct)  
**apply** fast  
**apply** (rename-tac W)  
**prefer** 2  
**apply** (rename-tac W X)  
**prefer** 2  
**apply** (unfold Image-def Int-def)  
**apply** (simp, safe)

```

apply (fold ChiPlus-def)
apply (case-tac (s,W) ∈ ChiRel A)
apply fast
apply (frule-tac S=s and T=W in ChiPlus-ChiRel-Ex2)
apply simp
apply safe
apply (rename-tac X)
apply (rule-tac x=X in exI)
apply (fast intro: ChiRel-ChiPlus-trans)
apply simp
apply (case-tac (s,X) ∈ ChiRel A)
apply force
apply (frule-tac S=s and T=X in ChiPlus-ChiRel-Ex2)
apply simp
apply safe
apply (rename-tac Y)
apply (erule-tac x=Y in allE)
apply simp
apply (fast intro: ChiRel-ChiPlus-trans)
apply simp
apply (case-tac (s,X) ∈ ChiRel A)
apply force
apply (frule-tac S=s and T=X in ChiPlus-ChiRel-Ex2)
apply simp
apply safe
apply (rename-tac Y)
apply (erule-tac x=Y in allE)
apply simp
apply (fast intro: ChiRel-ChiPlus-trans)
apply fastforce
apply simp
apply (erule-tac x=W in allE)
apply simp
apply simp
apply (rename-tac Y)
apply (erule-tac x=Y in allE)
apply simp
apply (fast intro: ChiRel-ChiPlus-trans)
done

```

**lemma** *SASates-ChiPlus-ChiRel-trans* [*rule-format*]:

```

[[ (S,U) ∈ (ChiPlus A); (U,T) ∈ (ChiRel A); S ∈ States SA; SA ∈ SAs A ]] ⇒
T ∉ States SA
apply (cut-tac HA=A in NoCycles-HA)
apply (unfold NoCycles-def)
apply (erule-tac x=insert S (insert U ({V. (S,V) ∈ ChiPlus A ∧ (V,U) ∈ ChiPlus A})) in ballE)
prefer 2
apply (simp add: ChiPlus-subset-States)

```

```

apply (cut-tac  $A=A$  in ChiPlus-HAStates)
apply (unfold HAStates-def)
apply auto[1]
apply safe
apply fast
apply (frule SASates-ChiPlus-ChiRel-NoCycle-2)
apply fast
apply (frule HAStates-SA-mem)
apply fast
apply (simp only:ChiRel-CompFun)
apply (frule SASates-ChiPlus-ChiRel-NoCycle-1)
apply auto[3]
apply fast
apply (simp add:ChiRel-CompFun)
apply (frule SASates-ChiPlus-ChiRel-NoCycle-3)
apply fast
apply fast
back
apply fast
apply (simp only:ChiPlus-HAStates-Left ChiRel-CompFun)
done

```

```

lemma SASates-ChiPlus2 [rule-format]:
   $\llbracket (S,T) \in \text{ChiPlus } A; SA \in \text{SAs } A \rrbracket \implies S \in \text{States } SA \longrightarrow T \notin \text{States } SA$ 
apply (unfold ChiPlus-def)
apply (rule-tac  $a=S$  and  $b=T$  and  $r=(\text{ChiRel } A)$  in trancl-induct)
apply auto
apply (rename-tac  $U$ )
apply (frule-tac  $S=S$  and  $T=U$  in SASates-ChiRel)
apply auto
apply (fold ChiPlus-def)
apply (simp only: SASates-ChiPlus-ChiRel-trans)
done

```

```

lemma SASates-ChiPlus [rule-format]:
   $\llbracket S \in \text{States } SA; T \in \text{States } SA; SA \in \text{SAs } A \rrbracket \implies (S,T) \notin \text{ChiPlus } A$ 
apply auto
apply (simp only: SASates-ChiPlus2)
done

```

```

lemma SASates-ChiPlus-ChiRel-OneAncestor [rule-format]:
   $\llbracket T \in \text{States } SA; SA \in \text{SAs } A; (S,U) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \rrbracket \implies S \neq T \longrightarrow S \in \text{States } SA \longrightarrow (T,U) \notin \text{ChiRel } A$ 
apply (unfold ChiPlus-def)
apply (rule-tac  $a=S$  and  $b=U$  and  $r=(\text{ChiRel } A)$  in trancl-induct)
apply auto
apply (simp add: ChiRel-OneAncestor-notmem)
apply (rename-tac  $V W$ )
apply (fold ChiPlus-def)

```

**apply** (*case-tac*  $V=T$ )  
**apply** (*simp add: ChiRel-OneAncestor-notmem SASates-ChiPlus*)  
**done**

**lemma** *SASates-ChiPlus-OneAncestor* [*rule-format*]:  
 $\llbracket T \in \text{States } SA; SA \in \text{SAs } A; (S,U) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \rrbracket \implies S \neq T \longrightarrow$   
 $S \in \text{States } SA \longrightarrow (T,U) \notin \text{ChiPlus } A$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac a=S and b=U and r=(ChiRel A) in trancl-induct*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*fold ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** (*rename-tac V*)  
**apply** (*frule-tac T=S and S=T and U=V in SASates-ChiPlus-ChiRel-OneAncestor*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac V W*)  
**apply** (*frule-tac S=T and T=W in ChiPlus-ChiRel-Ex*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*frule-tac T=T and S=S and U=W in SASates-ChiPlus-ChiRel-OneAncestor*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rule ChiRel-ChiPlus-trans*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac X*)  
**apply** (*case-tac V=X*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*simp add: ChiRel-OneAncestor-notmem*)  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiRel-ChiPlus-OneAncestor* [*rule-format*]:  
 $\llbracket (T,U) \in \text{ChiPlus } A \rrbracket \implies T \neq S \longrightarrow (S,U) \in \text{ChiRel } A \longrightarrow (T,S) \in \text{ChiPlus}$   
 $A$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac a=T and b=U and r=(ChiRel A) in trancl-induct*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*fast intro: ChiRel-OneAncestor*)  
**apply** (*rename-tac V W*)  
**apply** (*case-tac S=V*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*fast intro: ChiRel-OneAncestor*)  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiPlus-SA-OneAncestor* [*rule-format*]:  
 $\llbracket (S,T) \in \text{ChiPlus } A;$   
 $U \in \text{States } SA; SA \in \text{SAs } A \rrbracket \implies T \in \text{States } SA \longrightarrow$   
 $(S,U) \in \text{ChiPlus } A$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac a=S and b=T and r=(ChiRel A) in converse-trancl-induct*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*frule ChiRel-SA-OneAncestor*)  
**apply** *fast+*

done

### 7.2.14 *ChiStar*

**lemma** *ChiPlus-ChiStar* [simp]:  
[[  $(S, T) \in \text{ChiPlus } A$  ]]  $\implies (S, T) \in \text{ChiStar } A$   
**by** (unfold *ChiPlus-def ChiStar-def*, auto)

**lemma** *HARootState-Range-ChiStar* [simp]:  
[[  $x \neq S$ ;  $S \in \text{States } (\text{HARoot } A)$  ]]  $\implies (x, S) \notin (\text{ChiStar } A)$   
**apply** (unfold *ChiStar-def*)  
**apply** (subst *rtrancl-eq-or-trancl*)  
**apply** (fold *ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** auto  
done

**lemma** *ChiStar-Self* [simp]:  
 $(S, S) \in \text{ChiStar } A$   
**apply** (unfold *ChiStar-def*)  
**apply** *simp*  
done

**lemma** *ChiStar-Image* [simp]:  
 $S \in M \implies S \in (\text{ChiStar } A \text{ `` } M)$   
**apply** (unfold *Image-def*)  
**apply** (auto intro: *ChiStar-Self*)  
done

**lemma** *ChiStar-ChiPlus-noteq*:  
[[  $S \neq T$ ;  $(S, T) \in \text{ChiStar } A$  ]]  $\implies (S, T) \in \text{ChiPlus } A$   
**apply** (unfold *ChiPlus-def ChiStar-def*)  
**apply** (*simp add: rtrancl-eq-or-trancl*)  
done

**lemma** *ChiRel-ChiStar-trans*:  
[[  $(S, U) \in \text{ChiStar } A$ ;  $(U, T) \in \text{ChiRel } A$  ]]  $\implies (S, T) \in \text{ChiStar } A$   
**apply** (unfold *ChiStar-def*)  
**apply** auto  
done

### 7.2.15 *InitConf*

**lemma** *InitConf-HAStates* [simp]:  
 $\text{InitConf } A \subseteq \text{HAStates } A$   
**apply** (unfold *InitConf-def HAStates-def*)  
**apply** auto  
**apply** (rule *rtrancl-induct*)  
**back**  
**apply** auto  
**apply** (rule-tac  $x = \text{HARoot } A$  in *beXI*)

```

apply auto
apply (unfold HAStates-def ChiRel-def)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma InitConf-HAStates2 [simp]:
   $S \in \text{InitConf } A \implies S \in \text{HAStates } A$ 
apply (cut-tac A=A in InitConf-HAStates)
apply fast
done

```

```

lemma HAINitState-InitConf [simp]:
   $\text{HAINitState } A \in \text{InitConf } A$ 
by (unfold HAINitState-def InitConf-def, auto)

```

```

lemma InitConf-HAINitState-HARoot:
   $\llbracket S \in \text{InitConf } A; S \neq \text{HAINitState } A \rrbracket \implies S \notin \text{States } (\text{HARoot } A)$ 
apply (unfold InitConf-def)
apply auto
apply (rule mp)
prefer 2
apply fast
back
apply (rule mp)
prefer 2
apply fast
back
back
apply (rule-tac b=S in rtrancl-induct)
apply auto
apply (simp add: ChiRel-HARoot)+
done

```

```

lemma InitConf-HARoot-HAINitState [simp]:
   $\llbracket S \in \text{InitConf } A; S \in \text{States } (\text{HARoot } A) \rrbracket \implies S = \text{HAINitState } A$ 
apply (subst not-not [THEN sym])
apply (rule notI)
apply (simp add:InitConf-HAINitState-HARoot)
done

```

```

lemma HAINitState-CompFun-InitConf [simp]:
   $\llbracket SA \in \text{the } (\text{CompFun } A \ (\text{HAINitState } A)) \rrbracket \implies (\text{InitState } SA) \in \text{InitConf } A$ 
apply (unfold InitConf-def HAStates-def)
apply auto
apply (rule rtrancl-Int)
apply auto
apply (cut-tac A=A and S=HAINitState A in HAStates-CompFun-States-ChiRel)
apply auto
apply (rule Image-singleton-iff [THEN subst])

```

```

apply (rotate-tac -1)
apply (drule sym)
apply simp
apply (rule-tac x=SA in bezI)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** *InitState-CompFun-InitConf:*

```

[[ S ∈ HStates A; SA ∈ the (CompFun A S); S ∈ InitConf A ]] ==> (InitState
SA) ∈ InitConf A
apply (unfold InitConf-def)
apply auto
apply (rule-tac b=S in rtrancl-into-rtrancl)
apply fast
apply (frule rtrancl-Int1)
apply auto
apply (case-tac S = HInitState A)
apply simp
apply (rule rtrancl-mem-Sigma)
apply auto
apply (cut-tac A=A and S=S in HStates-CompFun-States-ChiRel)
apply auto
apply (rule Image-singleton-iff [THEN subst])
apply (rotate-tac -1)
apply (drule sym)
apply simp
apply (rule-tac x=SA in bezI)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** *InitConf-HInitStates:*

```

InitConf A ⊆ HInitStates A
apply (unfold InitConf-def)
apply (rule subsetI)
apply auto
apply (frule rtrancl-Int1)
apply (case-tac x = HInitState A)
apply simp
apply (rule rtrancl-mem-Sigma)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** *InitState-notmem-InitConf:*

```

[[ SA ∈ the (CompFun A S); S ∈ InitConf A; T ∈ States SA;
T ≠ InitState SA ]] ==> T ∉ InitConf A
apply (frule InitConf-HStates2)
apply (unfold InitConf-def)
apply auto
apply (rule mp)

```

```

prefer 2
apply fast
apply (rule mp)
prefer 2
apply fast
back
apply (rule mp)
prefer 2
apply fast
back
back
apply (rule mp)
prefer 2
apply fast
back
back
back
apply (rule mp)
prefer 2
apply fast
back
back
back
back
apply (rule mp)
prefer 2
apply fast
back
back
back
back
apply (rule-tac b=T in rtrancl-induct)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma InitConf-CompFun-InitState [simp]:
  [| SA ∈ the (CompFun A S); S ∈ InitConf A; T ∈ States SA;
    T ∈ InitConf A |] ⇒ T = InitState SA
apply (subst not-not [THEN sym])
apply (rule notI)
apply (frule InitState-notmem-InitConf)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma InitConf-ChiRel-Ancestor:
  [| T ∈ InitConf A; (S,T) ∈ ChiRel A |] ⇒ S ∈ InitConf A
apply (unfold InitConf-def)
apply auto

```

```

apply (erule rtranclE)
apply auto
apply (rename-tac U)
apply (cut-tac A=A in HAINitState-notmem-Range-ChiRel)
apply auto
apply (case-tac U = S)
apply (auto simp add: ChiRel-OneAncestor)
done

```

```

lemma InitConf-CompFun-Ancestor:
   $\llbracket S \in HAStates\ A; SA \in the\ (CompFun\ A\ S); T \in InitConf\ A; T \in States\ SA \rrbracket$ 
   $\implies S \in InitConf\ A$ 
apply (rule InitConf-ChiRel-Ancestor)
apply auto
apply (rule CompFun-ChiRel)
apply auto
done

```

### 7.2.16 StepConf

```

lemma StepConf-EmptySet [simp]:
  StepConf A C {} = C
by (unfold StepConf-def, auto)

```

**end**

## 8 Semantics of Hierarchical Automata

```

theory HASem
imports HA
begin

```

### 8.1 Definitions

**definition**

```

RootExSem ::  $[(('s,'e,'d)seqauto)\ set, 's \rightarrow ('s,'e,'d)seqauto\ set,$ 
              $'s\ set] \Rightarrow bool$  where
RootExSem F G C ==  $(\exists! S. S \in States\ (Root\ F\ G) \wedge S \in C)$ 

```

**definition**

```

UniqueSucStates ::  $[(('s,'e,'d)seqauto)\ set, 's \rightarrow ('s,'e,'d)seqauto\ set,$ 
                   $'s\ set] \Rightarrow bool$  where
UniqueSucStates F G C ==  $\forall S \in (\bigcup (States\ 'F)).$ 
                         $\forall A \in the\ (G\ S).$ 
                        if  $(S \in C)$  then
                         $\exists! S' . S' \in States\ A \wedge S' \in C$ 
                        else
                         $\forall S \in States\ A. S \notin C$ 

```

**definition**

$IsConfSet :: [((\text{'s}, \text{'e}, \text{'d})seqauto) \text{ set}, \text{'s} \rightarrow (\text{'s}, \text{'e}, \text{'d})seqauto \text{ set},$   
 $\text{'s set}] \Rightarrow \text{bool}$  **where**  
 $IsConfSet F G C ==$   
 $C \subseteq (\bigcup (\text{States } ' F)) \ \&$   
 $RootExSem F G C \ \&$   
 $UniqueSucStates F G C$

**definition**

$Status :: [(\text{'s}, \text{'e}, \text{'d})hierauto,$   
 $\text{'s set},$   
 $\text{'e set},$   
 $\text{'d data}] \Rightarrow \text{bool}$  **where**  
 $Status HA C E D == E \subseteq HAEvents HA \wedge$   
 $IsConfSet (SAs HA) (CompFun HA) C \wedge$   
 $Data.DataSpace (HAINitValue HA) = Data.DataSpace D$

**8.1.1 Status****lemma Status-EmptySet:**

$(Abs-hierauto ((@ x . True),$   
 $\{Abs-seqauto (\{ @ x . True\}, (@ x . True), \{\}, \{\}), \{\}, Map.empty(@ x . True$   
 $\mapsto \{\})),$   
 $\{ @ x . True\}, \{\}, @ x . True) \in$   
 $\{(HA, C, E, D) \mid HA C E D. Status HA C E D\}$   
**apply**  $(unfold \text{Status-def} \text{CompFun-def} \text{SAs-def})$   
**apply**  $auto$   
**apply**  $(subst \text{Abs-hierauto-inverse})$   
**apply**  $(subst \text{hierauto-def})$   
**apply**  $(rule \text{HierAuto-EmptySet})$   
**apply**  $(subst \text{Abs-hierauto-inverse})$   
**apply**  $(subst \text{hierauto-def})$   
**apply**  $(rule \text{HierAuto-EmptySet})$   
**apply**  $auto$   
**apply**  $(unfold \text{IsConfSet-def} \text{UniqueSucStates-def} \text{RootExSem-def})$   
**apply**  $auto$   
**apply**  $(unfold \text{States-def})$   
**apply**  $auto$   
**apply**  $(unfold \text{Root-def})$   
**apply**  $(rule \text{someI2})$   
**apply**  $(rule \text{conjI})$   
**apply**  $fast$   
**apply**  $(simp \text{add: ran-def})$   
**apply**  $simp$   
**apply**  $(subst \text{Abs-seqauto-inverse})$   
**apply**  $(subst \text{seqauto-def})$   
**apply**  $(rule \text{SeqAuto-EmptySet})$   
**apply**  $simp$   
**apply**  $(unfold \text{HAINitValue-def})$

```

apply auto
apply (subst Abs-hierauto-inverse)
apply (subst hierauto-def)
apply (rule HierAuto-EmptySet)
apply simp
done

```

**definition**

```

status =
  {(HA, C, E, D) |
    (HA::('s,'e,'d)hierauto)
    (C::('s set))
    (E::('e set))
    (D::'d data). Status HA C E D}

```

```

typedef ('s,'e,'d) status =
  status :: (('s,'e,'d)hierauto * 's set * 'e set * 'd data) set
unfolding status-def
apply (rule exI)
apply (rule Status-EmptySet)
done

```

**definition**

```

HA :: ('s,'e,'d) status => ('s,'e,'d) hierauto where
HA == fst o Rep-status

```

**definition**

```

Conf :: ('s,'e,'d) status => 's set where
Conf == fst o snd o Rep-status

```

**definition**

```

Events :: ('s,'e,'d) status => 'e set where
Events == fst o snd o snd o Rep-status

```

**definition**

```

Value :: ('s,'e,'d) status => 'd data where
Value == snd o snd o snd o Rep-status

```

**definition**

```

RootState :: ('s,'e,'d) status => 's where
RootState ST == @ S. S ∈ Conf ST ∧ S ∈ States (HARoot (HA ST))

```

**definition**

```

EnabledTrans :: (('s,'e,'d)status * ('s,'e,'d)seqauto *

```

$(\text{'s, 'e, 'd})\text{trans}$  set **where**  
 $\text{EnabledTrans} == \{(ST, SA, T) .$   
 $SA \in \text{SAs } (HA \text{ } ST) \wedge$   
 $T \in \text{Delta } SA \wedge$   
 $\text{source } T \in \text{Conf } ST \wedge$   
 $(\text{Conf } ST, \text{Events } ST, \text{Value } ST) \models (\text{label } T) \}$

**definition**

$ET :: (\text{'s, 'e, 'd}) \text{status} \Rightarrow ((\text{'s, 'e, 'd}) \text{trans}) \text{ set } \mathbf{where}$   
 $ET \text{ } ST == \bigcup SA \in \text{SAs } (HA \text{ } ST). (\text{EnabledTrans } \{ST\}) \{SA\}$

**definition**

$\text{MaxNonConflict} :: [(\text{'s, 'e, 'd})\text{status},$   
 $(\text{'s, 'e, 'd})\text{trans set}] \Rightarrow \text{bool } \mathbf{where}$   
 $\text{MaxNonConflict } ST \text{ } T ==$   
 $(T \subseteq ET \text{ } ST) \wedge$   
 $(\forall A \in \text{SAs } (HA \text{ } ST). \text{card } (T \text{ Int } \text{Delta } A) \leq 1) \wedge$   
 $(\forall t \in (ET \text{ } ST). (t \in T) = (\neg (\exists t' \in ET \text{ } ST. \text{HigherPriority } (HA \text{ } ST)$   
 $(t', t))))$

**definition**

$\text{ResolveRacing} :: (\text{'s, 'e, 'd})\text{trans set}$   
 $\Rightarrow (\text{'d update set}) \mathbf{where}$   
 $\text{ResolveRacing } TS ==$   
 $\text{let}$   
 $U = \text{PUpdate } (\text{Label } TS)$   
 $\text{in}$   
 $\text{SequentialRacing } U$

**definition**

$\text{HPT} :: (\text{'s, 'e, 'd})\text{status} \Rightarrow ((\text{'s, 'e, 'd})\text{trans set}) \text{ set } \mathbf{where}$   
 $\text{HPT } ST == \{ T. \text{MaxNonConflict } ST \text{ } T \}$

**definition**

*InitStatus* :: ('s,'e,'d)hierauto => ('s,'e,'d)status **where**  
*InitStatus* A ==  
 Abs-status (A,InitConf A,{}, HAINitValue A)

**definition**

*StepActEvent* :: ('s,'e,'d)trans set => 'e set **where**  
*StepActEvent* TS == Union (Actevent (Label TS))

**definition**

*StepStatus* :: [('s,'e,'d)status, ('s,'e,'d)trans set, 'd update]  
 => ('s,'e,'d)status **where**  
*StepStatus* ST TS U =  
 (let  
 (A,C,E,D) = Rep-status ST;  
 C' = StepConf A C TS;  
 E' = StepActEvent TS;  
 D' = U !!! D  
 in  
 Abs-status (A,C',E',D'))

**definition**

*StepRelSem* :: ('s,'e,'d)hierauto  
 => (('s,'e,'d)status \* ('s,'e,'d)status) set **where**  
*StepRelSem* A == {(ST,ST'). (HA ST) = A ∧  
 ((HPT ST ≠ {}) →  
 (∃ TS ∈ HPT ST.  
 ∃ U ∈ ResolveRacing TS.  
 ST' = StepStatus ST TS U)) &  
 ((HPT ST = {}) →  
 (ST' = StepStatus ST {} DefaultUpdate))}

**inductive-set**

```

  ReachStati :: ('s,'e,'d)hierauto => ('s,'e,'d) status set
  for A :: ('s,'e,'d)hierauto
  where
    Status0 : InitStatus A ∈ ReachStati A
  | StatusStep :
    ⌈ ST ∈ ReachStati A; TS ∈ HPT ST; U ∈ ResolveRacing TS ⌋
    ⇒ StepStatus ST TS U ∈ ReachStati A

```

**8.2 Lemmas****lemma Rep-status-tuple:**

```

  Rep-status ST = (HA ST, Conf ST, Events ST, Value ST)
  by (unfold HA-def Conf-def Events-def Value-def, simp)

```

**lemma Rep-status-select:**

```

  (HA ST, Conf ST, Events ST, Value ST) ∈ status
  by (rule Rep-status-tuple [THEN subst], rule Rep-status)

```

**lemma Status-select [simp]:**

```

  Status (HA ST) (Conf ST) (Events ST) (Value ST)
  apply (cut-tac Rep-status-select)
  apply (unfold status-def)
  apply simp
  done

```

**8.2.1 IsConfSet****lemma IsConfSet-Status [simp]:**

```

  IsConfSet (SAs (HA ST)) (CompFun (HA ST)) (Conf ST)
  apply (cut-tac Rep-status-select)
  apply (unfold status-def Status-def)
  apply auto
  done

```

**8.2.2 InitStatus****lemma IsConfSet-InitConf [simp]:**

```

  IsConfSet (SAs A) (CompFun A) (InitConf A)
  apply (unfold IsConfSet-def RootExSem-def UniqueSucStates-def, fold HARoot-def)
  apply (rule conjI)
  apply (fold HAStates-def, simp)
  apply (rule conjI)
  apply (rule-tac a=HAINitState A in ex1I)
  apply auto
  apply (rename-tac S SA)

```

```

apply (case-tac  $S \in \text{InitConf } A$ )
apply auto
apply (rule-tac  $x = \text{InitState } SA \text{ in } exI$ )
apply auto
apply (rule InitState-CompFun-InitConf)
apply auto
apply (rename-tac  $S \ SA \ T \ U$ )
apply (case-tac  $U = \text{InitState } SA$ )
apply auto
apply (simp only:InitConf-CompFun-Ancestor HAStates-SA-mem, simp)+
done

```

```

lemma InitConf-status [simp]:
   $(A, \text{InitConf } A, \{\}, \text{HAInitValue } A) \in \text{status}$ 
apply (cut-tac Rep-status-select)
apply (unfold status-def Status-def)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma Conf-InitStatus-InitConf [simp]:
   $\text{Conf } (\text{InitStatus } A) = \text{InitConf } A$ 
apply (unfold Conf-def InitStatus-def)
apply simp
apply (subst Abs-status-inverse)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma HAInitValue-Value-DataSpace-Status [simp]:
   $\text{Data.DataSpace } (\text{HAInitValue } (\text{HA } ST)) = \text{Data.DataSpace } (\text{Value } ST)$ 
apply (cut-tac Rep-status-select)
apply (unfold status-def Status-def)
apply fast
done

```

```

lemma Value-InitStatus-HAInitValue [simp]:
   $\text{Value } (\text{InitStatus } A) = \text{HAInitValue } A$ 
apply (unfold Value-def InitStatus-def)
apply simp
apply (subst Abs-status-inverse)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma HA-InitStatus [simp]:
   $\text{HA } (\text{InitStatus } A) = A$ 
apply (unfold InitStatus-def HA-def)
apply auto
apply (subst Abs-status-inverse)
apply auto
done

```

### 8.2.3 Events

**lemma** *Events-HAEvents-Status*:  
     $(Events\ ST) \subseteq HAEvents\ (HA\ ST)$   
**apply** (*cut-tac Rep-status-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold status-def Status-def*)  
**apply** *fast*  
**done**

**lemma** *TS-EventSet*:  
     $TS \subseteq ET\ ST \implies \bigcup (Actevent\ (Label\ TS)) \subseteq HAEvents\ (HA\ ST)$   
**apply** (*unfold Actevent-def actevent-def ET-def EnabledTrans-def Action-def Label-def*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac HA=HA ST in HAEvents-SAEvents-SAs*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac Event Source Trigger Guard Action Update Target*)  
**apply** (*unfold SAEvents-def*)  
**apply** (*erule subsetCE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac SA*)  
**apply** (*erule subsetCE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=SA in ballE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=(Trigger, Guard, Action, Update) in ballE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*cut-tac SA=SA in Label-Delta-subset*)  
**apply** (*erule subsetCE*)  
**apply** (*unfold Label-def image-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

### 8.2.4 StepStatus

**lemma** *StepStatus-empty*:  
     $Abs\ status\ (HA\ ST, Conf\ ST, \{\}, U\ !!!\ (Value\ ST)) = StepStatus\ ST\ \{\}\ U$   
**apply** (*unfold StepStatus-def Let-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*subst Rep-status-tuple*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*unfold StepActEvent-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *status-empty-eventset [simp]*:  
     $(HA\ ST, Conf\ ST, \{\}, U\ !!!\ (Value\ ST)) \in status$   
**apply** (*unfold status-def Status-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *HA-StepStatus-emptyTS* [simp]:  
 $HA (StepStatus ST \{ \} U) = HA ST$   
**apply** (*subst StepStatus-empty* [THEN sym])  
**apply** (*unfold HA-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*subst Abs-status-inverse*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*subst Rep-status-tuple*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

### 8.2.5 Enabled Transitions *ET*

**lemma** *HPT-ETI*:  
 $TS \in HPT ST \implies TS \subseteq ET ST$   
**by** (*unfold HPT-def MaxNonConflict-def, auto*)

**lemma** *finite-ET* [simp]:  
 $finite (ET ST)$   
**by** (*unfold ET-def Image-def EnabledTrans-def, auto*)

### 8.2.6 Finite Transition Set

**lemma** *finite-MaxNonConflict* [simp]:  
 $MaxNonConflict ST TS \implies finite TS$   
**apply** (*unfold MaxNonConflict-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*subst finite-subset*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *finite-HPT* [simp]:  
 $TS \in HPT ST \implies finite TS$   
**by** (*unfold HPT-def, auto*)

### 8.2.7 *PUpdate*

**lemma** *finite-Update*:  
 $finite TS \implies finite ((\lambda F. (Rep-pupdate F) (Value ST)) \text{ ` } (PUpdate (Label TS)))$   
**by** (*rule finite-imageI, auto*)

**lemma** *finite-PUpdate*:  
 $TS \in HPT S \implies finite (Expr.PUpdate (Label TS))$   
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *HPT-ResolveRacing-Some* [simp]:  
 $TS \in HPT S \implies (SOME u. u \in ResolveRacing TS) \in ResolveRacing TS$   
**apply** (*unfold ResolveRacing-def Let-def*)  
**apply** (*rule finite-SequentialRacing*)

**apply** *auto*  
**done**

### 8.2.8 Higher Priority Transitions *HPT*

**lemma** *finite-HPT2* [*simp*]:  
*finite* (*HPT ST*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac ST=ST in finite-ET*)  
**apply** (*unfold HPT-def MaxNonConflict-def*)  
**apply** (*subst Collect-subset*)  
**apply** (*frule finite-Collect-subsets*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *HPT-target-StepConf* [*simp*]:  
 $\llbracket TS \in HPT\ ST; T \in TS \rrbracket \implies \text{target } T \in \text{StepConf } (HA\ ST) (Conf\ ST)\ TS$   
**apply** (*unfold StepConf-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *HPT2-target-StepConf2* [*simp*]:  
 $\llbracket TS \in HPT\ ST; (S,L,T) \in TS \rrbracket \implies T \in \text{StepConf } (HA\ ST) (Conf\ ST)\ TS$   
**apply** (*unfold StepConf-def Target-def Source-def source-def target-def image-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

### 8.2.9 Delta Transition Set

**lemma** *ET-Delta*:  
 $\llbracket TS \subseteq ET\ ST; t \in TS; \text{source } t \in \text{States } A; A \in SAs\ (HA\ ST) \rrbracket \implies t \in \text{Delta } A$   
**apply** (*unfold ET-def EnabledTrans-def*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*erule subsetCE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac SA*)  
**apply** (*case-tac A = SA*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*cut-tac HA=HA ST in MutuallyDistinct-HA*)  
**apply** (*unfold MutuallyDistinct-def*)  
**apply** *force*  
**done**

**lemma** *ET-Delta-target*:  
 $\llbracket TS \subseteq ET\ ST; t \in TS; \text{target } t \in \text{States } A; A \in SAs\ (HA\ ST) \rrbracket \implies t \in \text{Delta } A$   
**apply** (*unfold ET-def EnabledTrans-def*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*erule subsetCE*)

```

apply auto
apply (rename-tac SA)
apply (case-tac A = SA)
apply auto
apply (cut-tac HA=HA ST in MutuallyDistinct-HA)
apply (unfold MutuallyDistinct-def)
apply force
done

```

```

lemma ET-HADelta:
   $\llbracket TS \subseteq ET\ ST; t \in TS \rrbracket \implies t \in HADelta\ (HA\ ST)$ 
apply (unfold HADelta-def)
apply auto
apply (unfold ET-def EnabledTrans-def Image-def)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma HPT-HADelta:
   $\llbracket TS \in HPT\ ST; t \in TS \rrbracket \implies t \in HADelta\ (HA\ ST)$ 
apply (rule ET-HADelta)
apply (unfold HPT-def MaxNonConflict-def)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma HPT-Delta:
   $\llbracket TS \in HPT\ ST; t \in TS; source\ t \in States\ A; A \in SAs\ (HA\ ST) \rrbracket \implies t \in Delta\ A$ 
apply (rule ET-Delta)
apply auto
apply (unfold HPT-def MaxNonConflict-def)
apply fast
done

```

```

lemma HPT-Delta-target:
   $\llbracket TS \in HPT\ ST; t \in TS; target\ t \in States\ A; A \in SAs\ (HA\ ST) \rrbracket \implies t \in Delta\ A$ 
apply (rule ET-Delta-target)
apply auto
apply (unfold HPT-def MaxNonConflict-def)
apply fast
done

```

```

lemma OneTrans-HPT-SA:
   $\llbracket TS \in HPT\ ST; T \in TS; source\ T \in States\ SA; U \in TS; source\ U \in States\ SA; SA \in SAs\ (HA\ ST) \rrbracket \implies T = U$ 
apply (unfold HPT-def MaxNonConflict-def Source-def)
apply auto
apply (erule-tac x=SA in ballE)
apply (case-tac finite (TS  $\cap$  Delta SA))

```

```

apply (frule-tac  $t=T$  in OneElement-Card)
apply fast
apply (frule-tac  $t=T$  and  $A=SA$  in ET-Delta)
apply assumption+
apply fast
apply (frule-tac  $t=U$  in OneElement-Card)
apply fast
apply (frule-tac  $t=U$  and  $A=SA$  in ET-Delta)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** *OneTrans-HPT-SA2*:

```

  [  $TS \in HPT\ ST; T \in TS; \text{target } T \in \text{States } SA;$ 
     $U \in TS; \text{target } U \in \text{States } SA; SA \in SAs (HA\ ST) ] \implies T = U$ 
apply (unfold HPT-def MaxNonConflict-def Target-def)
apply auto
apply (erule-tac  $x=SA$  in ballE)
apply (case-tac finite ( $TS \cap Delta\ SA$ ))
apply (frule-tac  $t=T$  in OneElement-Card)
apply fast
apply (frule-tac  $t=T$  and  $A=SA$  in ET-Delta-target)
apply assumption+
apply fast
apply (frule-tac  $t=U$  in OneElement-Card)
apply fast
apply (frule-tac  $t=U$  and  $A=SA$  in ET-Delta-target)
apply auto
done

```

### 8.2.10 Target Transition Set

**lemma** *ET-Target-HAStates*:

```

   $TS \subseteq ET\ ST \implies \text{Target } TS \subseteq HAStates (HA\ ST)$ 
apply (unfold HAStates-def Target-def target-def ET-def EnabledTrans-def Action-def
Label-def)
apply (cut-tac  $HA=HA\ ST$  in Target-SAs-Delta-States)
apply auto
apply (rename-tac Source Trigger Guard Action Update Target)
apply (unfold Target-def)
apply (erule subsetCE)
apply auto
apply (rename-tac SA)
apply (erule subsetCE)
apply auto
apply (unfold image-def)
apply auto
apply (metis target-select)
done

```

**lemma** *HPT-Target-HAStates*:  
 $TS \in \text{HPT } ST \implies \text{Target } TS \subseteq \text{HAStates } (HA \ ST)$   
**apply** (*rule HPT-ETI [THEN ET-Target-HAStates]*)  
**apply** *assumption*  
**done**

**lemma** *HPT-Target-HAStates2 [simp]*:  
 $\llbracket TS \in \text{HPT } ST; S \in \text{Target } TS \rrbracket \implies S \in \text{HAStates } (HA \ ST)$   
**apply** (*cut-tac HPT-Target-HAStates*)  
**apply** *fast+*  
**done**

**lemma** *OneState-HPT-Target*:  
 $\llbracket TS \in \text{HPT } ST; S \in \text{Target } TS;$   
 $T \in \text{Target } TS; S \in \text{States } SA;$   
 $T \in \text{States } SA; SA \in \text{SAs } (HA \ ST) \rrbracket$   
 $\implies S = T$   
**apply** (*unfold Target-def*)  
**apply** (*auto dest: OneTrans-HPT-SA2[rotated -1]*)  
**done**

### 8.2.11 Source Transition Set

**lemma** *ET-Source-Conf*:  
 $TS \subseteq \text{ET } ST \implies (\text{Source } TS) \subseteq \text{Conf } ST$   
**apply** (*unfold Source-def ET-def EnabledTrans-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *HPT-Source-Conf [simp]*:  
 $TS \in \text{HPT } ST \implies (\text{Source } TS) \subseteq \text{Conf } ST$   
**apply** (*unfold HPT-def MaxNonConflict-def*)  
**apply** (*rule ET-Source-Conf*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ET-Source-Target [simp]*:  
 $\llbracket SA \in \text{SAs } (HA \ ST); TS \subseteq \text{ET } ST; \text{States } SA \cap \text{Source } TS = \{\} \rrbracket \implies \text{States}$   
 $SA \cap \text{Target } TS = \{\}$   
**apply** (*unfold ET-def EnabledTrans-def Source-def Target-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac Source Trigger Guard Action Update Target*)  
**apply** (*erule subsetCE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac SAA*)  
**apply** (*unfold image-def source-def Int-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=Source in allE*)  
**apply** *auto*

```

apply (frule Delta-source-States)
apply (unfold source-def)
apply auto
apply (case-tac SA=SAA)
apply auto
apply (cut-tac HA=HA ST in MutuallyDistinct-HA)
apply (unfold MutuallyDistinct-def)
apply (erule-tac x=SA in ballE)
apply (erule-tac x=SAA in ballE)
apply auto
apply (frule Delta-target-States)
apply (unfold target-def)
apply force
done

```

```

lemma HPT-Source-Target [simp]:
   $\llbracket TS \in HPT\ ST; States\ SA \cap Source\ TS = \{\}; SA \in SAs\ (HA\ ST) \rrbracket \implies States\ SA \cap Target\ TS = \{\}$ 
apply (unfold HPT-def MaxNonConflict-def)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma ET-target-source:
   $\llbracket TS \subseteq ET\ ST; t \in TS; target\ t \in States\ A; A \in SAs\ (HA\ ST) \rrbracket \implies source\ t \in States\ A$ 
apply (frule ET-Delta-target)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma ET-source-target:
   $\llbracket TS \subseteq ET\ ST; t \in TS; source\ t \in States\ A; A \in SAs\ (HA\ ST) \rrbracket \implies target\ t \in States\ A$ 
apply (frule ET-Delta)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma HPT-target-source:
   $\llbracket TS \in HPT\ ST; t \in TS; target\ t \in States\ A; A \in SAs\ (HA\ ST) \rrbracket \implies source\ t \in States\ A$ 
apply (rule ET-target-source)
apply auto
apply (unfold HPT-def MaxNonConflict-def)
apply fast
done

```

```

lemma HPT-source-target:
   $\llbracket TS \in HPT\ ST; t \in TS; source\ t \in States\ A; A \in SAs\ (HA\ ST) \rrbracket \implies target\ t \in States\ A$ 
apply (rule ET-source-target)

```

**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*unfold HPT-def MaxNonConflict-def*)  
**apply** *fast*  
**done**

**lemma** *HPT-source-target2 [simp]*:  
 $\llbracket TS \in HPT\ ST; (s,l,t) \in TS; s \in States\ A; A \in SAs\ (HA\ ST) \rrbracket \implies t \in States\ A$   
**apply** (*cut-tac ST=ST and TS=TS and t=(s,l,t) in HPT-source-target*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiRel-ChiStar-Source-notmem*:  
 $\llbracket TS \in HPT\ ST; (S, T) \in ChiRel\ (HA\ ST); S \in Conf\ ST; T \notin ChiStar\ (HA\ ST) \text{ “ Source } TS \rrbracket \implies S \notin ChiStar\ (HA\ ST) \text{ “ Source } TS$   
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac U*)  
**apply** (*simp only: Image-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=U in ballE*)  
**apply** (*fast intro: ChiRel-ChiStar-trans*)+  
**done**

**lemma** *ChiRel-ChiStar-notmem*:  
 $\llbracket TS \in HPT\ ST; (S,T) \in ChiRel\ (HA\ ST); S \in ChiStar\ (HA\ ST) \text{ “ Source } TS \rrbracket \implies T \notin Source\ TS$   
**using** [*hypsubst-thin = true*]  
**apply** (*unfold HPT-def MaxNonConflict-def HigherPriority-def restrict-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac U*)  
**apply** (*unfold Source-def image-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac SSource STrigger SGuard SAction SUpdate STarget TSource TTrigger TGuard TAction TUpdate TTarget*)  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=(SSource, (STrigger, SGuard, SAction, SUpdate), STarget) in ballE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*erule-tac x=(TSource, (TTrigger, TGuard, TAction, TUpdate), TTarget) in ballE*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*simp add: ET-HADelta*)  
**apply** (*case-tac SSource=S*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*frule ChiStar-ChiPlus-noteq*)  
**apply** *fast*  
**apply** (*fast intro: ChiRel-ChiPlus-trans*)  
**done**

### 8.2.12 StepActEvents

**lemma** *StepActEvent-empty* [simp]:  
   $StepActEvent \{\} = \{\}$   
**by** (*unfold StepActEvent-def, auto*)

**lemma** *StepActEvent-HAEvents*:  
   $TS \in HPT\ ST \implies StepActEvent\ TS \subseteq HAEvents\ (HA\ ST)$   
**apply** (*unfold StepActEvent-def image-def*)  
**apply** (*rule HPT-ETI [THEN TS-EventSet]*)  
**apply** *assumption*  
**done**

### 8.2.13 UniqueSucStates

**lemma** *UniqueSucStates-Status* [simp]:  
   $UniqueSucStates\ (SAs\ (HA\ ST))\ (CompFun\ (HA\ ST))\ (Conf\ ST)$   
**apply** (*cut-tac Rep-status-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold status-def Status-def IsConfSet-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

### 8.2.14 RootState

**lemma** *RootExSem-Status* [simp]:  
   $RootExSem\ (SAs\ (HA\ ST))\ (CompFun\ (HA\ ST))\ (Conf\ ST)$   
**apply** (*cut-tac Rep-status-select*)  
**apply** (*unfold status-def Status-def IsConfSet-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *RootState-HARootState* [simp]:  
   $(RootState\ ST) \in States\ (HARoot\ (HA\ ST))$   
**apply** (*unfold RootState-def*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac ST=ST in RootExSem-Status*)  
**apply** (*unfold RootExSem-def HARoot-def HAStates-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*subst some1-equality*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *RootState-Conf* [simp]:  
   $(RootState\ ST) \in (Conf\ ST)$   
**apply** (*unfold RootState-def*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac ST=ST in RootExSem-Status*)  
**apply** (*unfold RootExSem-def HARoot-def HAStates-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*subst some1-equality*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *RootState-notmem-Chi* [simp]:  
 $S \in HAStates (HA ST) \implies (RootState ST) \notin Chi (HA ST) S$   
**by** *auto*

**lemma** *RootState-notmem-Range-ChiRel* [simp]:  
 $RootState ST \notin Range (ChiRel (HA ST))$   
**by** *auto*

**lemma** *RootState-Range-ChiPlus* [simp]:  
 $RootState ST \notin Range (ChiPlus (HA ST))$   
**by** *auto*

**lemma** *RootState-Range-ChiStar* [simp]:  
 $\llbracket x \neq RootState ST \rrbracket \implies (x, RootState ST) \notin (ChiStar (HA ST))$   
**by** *auto*

**lemma** *RootState-notmem-ChiRel* [simp]:  
 $(x, RootState ST) \notin (ChiRel (HA ST))$   
**by** (*unfold ChiRel-def, auto*)

**lemma** *RootState-notmem-ChiRel2* [simp]:  
 $\llbracket S \in States (HARoot (HA ST)) \rrbracket \implies (x, S) \notin (ChiRel (HA ST))$   
**by** (*unfold ChiRel-def, auto*)

**lemma** *RootState-Conf-StepConf* [simp]:  
 $\llbracket RootState ST \notin Source TS \rrbracket \implies RootState ST \in StepConf (HA ST) (Conf ST) TS$   
**apply** (*unfold StepConf-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac S*)  
**apply** (*case-tac S=RootState ST*)  
**apply** *fast*  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac S*)  
**apply** (*case-tac S=RootState ST*)  
**apply** *fast*  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *OneRootState-Conf* [simp]:  
 $\llbracket S \in States (HARoot (HA ST)); S \in Conf ST \rrbracket \implies S = RootState ST$   
**apply** (*cut-tac ST=ST in IsConfSet-Status*)  
**apply** (*unfold IsConfSet-def RootExSem-def*)  
**apply** (*fold HARoot-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *OneRootState-Source*:

```

  [  $TS \in \text{HPT } ST; S \in \text{Source } TS; S \in \text{States } (\text{HARoot } (HA \ ST))$  ]  $\implies S =$ 
  RootState  $ST$ 
  apply (cut-tac  $ST=ST$  and  $TS=TS$  in HPT-Source-Conf, assumption)
  apply (cut-tac  $ST=ST$  in OneRootState-Conf)
  apply fast+
  done

```

```

lemma OneState-HPT-Target-Source:
  [  $TS \in \text{HPT } ST; S \in \text{States } SA; SA \in \text{SAs } (HA \ ST);$ 
    States  $SA \cap \text{Source } TS = \{\}$  ]
   $\implies S \notin \text{Target } TS$ 
  apply (unfold Target-def)
  apply auto
  apply (unfold Source-def Image-def Int-def)
  apply auto
  apply (frule HPT-target-source)
  apply auto
  done

```

```

lemma RootState-notmem-Target [simp]:
  [  $TS \in \text{HPT } ST; S \in \text{States } (\text{HARoot } (HA \ ST)); \text{RootState } ST \notin \text{Source } TS$  ]
   $\implies S \notin \text{Target } TS$ 
  apply auto
  apply (frule OneState-HPT-Target-Source)
  prefer 4
  apply fast+
  apply simp
  apply (unfold Int-def)
  apply auto
  apply (frule OneRootState-Source)
  apply fast+
  done

```

### 8.2.15 Configuration Conf

```

lemma Conf-HAStates:
  Conf  $ST \subseteq \text{HAStates } (HA \ ST)$ 
  apply (cut-tac Rep-status-select)
  apply (unfold IsConfSet-def status-def Status-def HAStates-def)
  apply fast
  done

```

```

lemma Conf-HAStates2 [simp]:
   $S \in \text{Conf } ST \implies S \in \text{HAStates } (HA \ ST)$ 
  apply (cut-tac  $ST=ST$  in Conf-HAStates)
  apply fast
  done

```

```

lemma OneState-Conf [intro]:

```

```

  [  $S \in \text{Conf } ST; T \in \text{Conf } ST; S \in \text{States } SA; T \in \text{States } SA;$ 
     $SA \in \text{SAs } (HA \text{ } ST)$  ]  $\implies T = S$ 
apply (cut-tac  $ST=ST$  in IsConfSet-Status)
apply (unfold IsConfSet-def UniqueSucStates-def)
apply (case-tac  $SA = HARoot$  (HA ST))
apply (cut-tac  $ST=ST$  and  $S=S$  in OneRootState-Conf)
apply fast+
apply (simp only:OneRootState-Conf)
apply (erule conjE)+
apply (cut-tac  $HA=HA$  ST in OneAncestor-HA)
apply (unfold OneAncestor-def)
apply (fold HARoot-def)
apply (erule-tac  $x=SA$  in ballE)
apply (erule ex1-implies-ex)
apply (erule exE)
apply (rename-tac U)
apply (erule-tac  $x=U$  in ballE)
apply (erule-tac  $x=SA$  in ballE)
apply (case-tac  $U \in \text{Conf } ST$ )
apply simp
apply safe
apply fast+
apply simp
apply fast
done

```

**lemma** *OneState-HPT-SA*:

```

  [  $TS \in \text{HPT } ST; S \in \text{Source } TS; T \in \text{Source } TS;$ 
     $S \in \text{States } SA; T \in \text{States } SA;$ 
     $SA \in \text{SAs } (HA \text{ } ST)$  ]  $\implies S = T$ 
apply (rule OneState-Conf)
apply auto
apply (frule HPT-Source-Conf, fast)+
done

```

**lemma** *HPT-SASStates-Target-Source*:

```

  [  $TS \in \text{HPT } ST; A \in \text{SAs } (HA \text{ } ST); S \in \text{States } A; T \in \text{States } A; S \in \text{Conf } ST;$ 
     $T \in \text{Target } TS$  ]  $\implies S \in \text{Source } TS$ 
apply (case-tac  $\text{States } A \cap \text{Source } TS = \{\}$ )
apply (frule OneState-HPT-Target-Source)
apply fast
back
apply simp+
apply auto
apply (rename-tac U)
apply (cut-tac  $ST=ST$  in HPT-Source-Conf)
apply fast
apply (frule-tac  $S=S$  and  $T=U$  in OneState-Conf)
apply fast+

```

**done**

**lemma** *HPT-Conf-Target-Source*:

$\llbracket TS \in \text{HPT } ST; S \in \text{Conf } ST; \\ S \in \text{Target } TS \rrbracket \implies S \in \text{Source } TS$

**apply** (*frule Conf-HAStates2*)

**apply** (*unfold HAStates-def*)

**apply** *auto*

**apply** (*simp only:HPT-SAStates-Target-Source*)

**done**

**lemma** *Conf-SA*:

$S \in \text{Conf } ST \implies \exists A \in \text{SAs } (HA \text{ } ST). S \in \text{States } A$

**apply** (*cut-tac ST=ST in IsConfSet-Status*)

**apply** (*unfold IsConfSet-def*)

**apply** *fast*

**done**

**lemma** *HPT-Source-HAStates* [*simp*]:

$\llbracket TS \in \text{HPT } ST; S \in \text{Source } TS \rrbracket \implies S \in \text{HAStates } (HA \text{ } ST)$

**apply** (*frule HPT-Source-Conf*)

**apply** (*rule Conf-HAStates2*)

**apply** *fast*

**done**

**lemma** *Conf-Ancestor*:

$\llbracket S \in \text{Conf } ST; A \in \text{the } (\text{CompFun } (HA \text{ } ST) \text{ } S) \rrbracket \implies \exists! T \in \text{States } A. T \in \text{Conf } ST$

**apply** (*cut-tac ST=ST in IsConfSet-Status*)

**apply** (*unfold IsConfSet-def UniqueSucStates-def*)

**apply** *safe*

**apply** (*erule-tac x=S in ballE*)

**prefer** 2

**apply** *blast*

**apply** (*erule-tac x=A in ballE*)

**prefer** 2

**apply** *fast*

**apply** *simp*

**apply** (*fast intro: HAStates-CompFun-SAs-mem Conf-HAStates2*)<sup>+</sup>

**done**

**lemma** *Conf-ChiRel*:

$\llbracket (S,T) \in \text{ChiRel } (HA \text{ } ST); T \in \text{Conf } ST \rrbracket \implies S \in \text{Conf } ST$

**apply** (*unfold ChiRel-def Chi-def restrict-def*)

**apply** *simp*

**apply** *safe*

**apply** *simp*

**apply** *safe*

```

apply (rename-tac SA)
apply (unfold HAStates-def)
apply simp
apply safe
apply (rename-tac U)
apply (cut-tac ST=ST in UniqueSucStates-Status)
apply (unfold UniqueSucStates-def)
apply (erule-tac x=S in ballE)
apply (erule-tac x=SA in ballE)
apply auto
apply (case-tac S ∈ Conf ST)
apply simp+
done

```

**lemma** Conf-ChiPlus:

```

  [ (T,S) ∈ ChiPlus (HA ST) ] ⇒ S ∈ Conf ST → T ∈ Conf ST
apply (unfold ChiPlus-def)
apply (rule-tac a=T and b=S and r=(ChiRel (HA ST)) in trancl-induct)
apply (fast intro: Conf-ChiRel)+
done

```

**lemma** HPT-Conf-Target-Source-ChiPlus:

```

  [ TS ∈ HPT ST; S ∈ Conf ST; S ∈ ChiPlus (HA ST) “ Target TS ]
    ⇒ S ∈ ChiStar (HA ST) “ Source TS
apply auto
apply (rename-tac T)
apply (simp add: Image-def)
apply (frule HPT-Target-HAStates2)
apply fast
apply (unfold HAStates-def)
apply auto
apply (rename-tac SA)
apply (case-tac States SA ∩ Source TS = {})
apply (simp only: OneState-HPT-Target-Source)
apply auto
apply (rename-tac U)
apply (erule-tac x=U in ballE)
apply auto
apply (case-tac U=T)
apply auto
apply (frule Conf-ChiPlus)
apply simp
apply (frule HPT-Conf-Target-Source)
apply fast
back
apply fast
apply (simp add: OneState-HPT-SA)
done

```

```

lemma OneState-HPT-Target-ChiRel:
  [[  $TS \in \text{HPT } ST; (U, T) \in \text{ChiRel } (HA \text{ } ST);$ 
      $U \in \text{Target } TS; A \in \text{SAs } (HA \text{ } ST); T \in \text{States } A;$ 
      $S \in \text{States } A$  ]]  $\implies S \notin \text{Target } TS$ 
using [[hypsubst-thin = true]]
apply auto
apply (unfold HigherPriority-def restrict-def HPT-def MaxNonConflict-def Target-def)
apply auto
apply (rename-tac SSource STrigger SGuard SAction SUpdate STarget
         TSource TTrigger TGuard TAction TUpdate TTarget)
apply (cut-tac t=(TSource, (TTrigger, TGuard, TAction, TUpdate), TTarget)
         and TS=TS and ST=ST and A=A in ET-target-source)
apply assumption+
apply simp
apply assumption
apply (frule ChiRel-HAStates)
apply (unfold HAStates-def)
apply safe
apply (cut-tac t=(SSource, (STrigger, SGuard, SAction, SUpdate), STarget)
         and A=x and ST=ST and TS=TS in ET-target-source)
apply assumption+
apply simp
apply assumption
apply simp
apply (erule-tac x=(SSource, (STrigger, SGuard, SAction, SUpdate), STarget)
         in ballE)
apply simp
apply (erule-tac x=(TSource, (TTrigger, TGuard, TAction, TUpdate), TTarget)
         in ballE)
apply (simp add: ET-HADelta)
apply (cut-tac A=HA ST and S=STarget and T=T and U=TSource in ChiRel-SA-OneAncestor)
apply fast+
apply (frule ET-Source-Conf)
apply (unfold Source-def image-def)
apply (case-tac SSource  $\in$  Conf ST)
prefer 2
apply (erule subsetCE)
back
apply fast
back
apply simp
apply (case-tac TSource  $\in$  Conf ST)
prefer 2
apply (erule subsetCE)
back
apply fast
apply simp
apply (case-tac STarget=SSource)

```

```

apply simp
apply (fast intro: Conf-ChiRel)+
done

lemma OneState-HPT-Target-ChiPlus [rule-format]:
  [[  $TS \in \text{HPT } ST$ ;  $(U, T) \in \text{ChiPlus } (HA \ ST)$ ;
     $S \in \text{Target } TS$ ;  $A \in \text{SAs } (HA \ ST)$ ;
     $S \in \text{States } A$  ]]  $\implies T \in \text{States } A \longrightarrow U \notin \text{Target } TS$ 
using [[hypsubst-thin = true]]
apply (unfold ChiPlus-def)
apply (rule-tac a=U and b=T and r=(ChiRel (HA ST)) in converse-trancl-induct)
apply auto
apply (simp only: OneState-HPT-Target-ChiRel)
apply (rename-tac V W)
apply (fold ChiPlus-def)
apply (unfold HPT-def MaxNonConflict-def Target-def HigherPriority-def restrict-def)
apply auto
apply (rename-tac SSource STrigger SGuard SAction SUpdate STarget
  TSource TTrigger TGuard TAction TUpdate TTarget)
apply (cut-tac t=(SSource, (STrigger, SGuard, SAction, SUpdate), STarget) and
  ST=ST and TS=TS and A=A in ET-target-source)
apply assumption+
apply simp
apply assumption
apply simp
apply (frule ChiRel-HAStates)
apply (unfold HAStates-def)
apply safe
apply (cut-tac t=(TSource, (TTrigger, TGuard, TAction, TUpdate), TTarget)
  and A=x and TS=TS and ST=ST in ET-target-source)
apply assumption+
apply simp
apply assumption
apply simp
apply (erule-tac x=(TSource, (TTrigger, TGuard, TAction, TUpdate), TTarget)
  in ballE)
apply simp
apply (erule-tac x=(SSource, (STrigger, SGuard, SAction, SUpdate), STarget) in
  ballE)
apply (simp add: ET-HADelta)
apply (cut-tac A=HA ST and S=TTarget and T=T and U=SSource in ChiPlus-SA-OneAncestor)
apply (fast intro: ChiRel-ChiPlus-trans2)
apply fast+
apply (frule ET-Source-Conf)
apply (unfold Source-def image-def)
apply (case-tac SSource ∈ Conf ST)
prefer 2
apply (erule subsetCE)
back

```

```

apply fast
apply simp
apply (case-tac  $TSource \in Conf\ ST$ )
prefer 2
apply (erule subsetCE)
back
apply fast
back
apply simp
apply (case-tac  $TTarget=SSource$ )
apply simp
apply (frule-tac  $T=TTarget$  and  $S=SSource$  in Conf-ChiPlus)
apply simp
apply (frule-tac  $T=TSource$  and  $S=TTarget$  in OneState-Conf)
apply fast+
done

```

### 8.2.16 *RootExSem*

**lemma** *RootExSem-StepConf*:

```

   $\llbracket TS \in HPT\ ST \rrbracket \implies$ 
   $RootExSem\ (SAs\ (HA\ ST))\ (CompFun\ (HA\ ST))\ (StepConf\ (HA\ ST)\ (Conf$ 
   $ST)\ TS)$ 
apply (unfold RootExSem-def)
apply (fold HARoot-def)
apply auto
apply (case-tac  $RootState\ ST \notin Source\ TS$ )
apply (rule-tac  $x=RootState\ ST$  in exI)
apply simp
apply simp
apply (unfold Source-def image-def)
apply simp
apply (erule bexE)
apply (rename-tac  $T$ )
apply (rule-tac  $x=target\ T$  in exI)
apply simp
apply (rule HPT-source-target)
apply auto
apply (rename-tac  $S\ T$ )
apply (case-tac  $S \in Conf\ ST$ )
apply (case-tac  $T \in Conf\ ST$ )
apply (frule OneRootState-Conf)
apply auto
apply (frule OneRootState-Conf)
apply auto
apply (frule OneRootState-Conf)
apply auto
apply (case-tac  $RootState\ ST \in Source\ TS$ )
apply (case-tac  $T \in Source\ TS$ )

```

```

apply (frule HPT-Source-Conf)
apply fast
apply (unfold StepConf-def)
apply auto
apply (frule OneState-HPT-Target)
apply (frule-tac SA=HARoot (HA ST) and TS=TS and S=T and T=RootState
ST in OneState-HPT-Target)
apply fast+
apply simp+
apply (frule trancl-Int-mem, fold ChiPlus-def, force)+
prefer 2
apply (frule OneState-HPT-Target)
apply fast+
back
apply simp+
apply (case-tac RootState ST  $\in$  Source TS)
apply (case-tac T = RootState ST)
apply auto
apply (frule trancl-Int-mem, fold ChiPlus-def, force)+
done

```

### 8.2.17 StepConf

**lemma** Target-StepConf:

```

  S  $\in$  Target TS  $\implies$  S  $\in$  StepConf (HA ST) (Conf ST) TS
apply (unfold StepConf-def)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** Target-ChiRel-HAInit-StepConf:

```

  [ S  $\in$  Target TS; (S,T)  $\in$  ChiRel A;
  T  $\in$  HAInitStates A ]  $\implies$  T  $\in$  StepConf A C TS
apply (unfold StepConf-def)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** StepConf-HAStates:

```

  TS  $\in$  HPT ST  $\implies$  StepConf (HA ST) (Conf ST) TS  $\subseteq$  HAStates (HA ST)
apply (unfold StepConf-def)
apply auto
apply (frule tranclD2)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** RootState-Conf-StepConf2 [simp]:

```

  [ source T = RootState ST; T  $\in$  TS ]  $\implies$  target T  $\in$  StepConf (HA ST) (Conf
ST) TS
apply (unfold StepConf-def)
apply auto

```

**done**

**lemma** *HPT-StepConf-HAStates* [simp]:

$\llbracket TS \in \text{HPT } ST; S \in \text{StepConf } (HA \ ST) \ (Conf \ ST) \ TS \rrbracket \implies S \in \text{HAStates } (HA \ ST)$

**apply** (*unfold StepConf-def*)

**apply** *auto*

**apply** (*frule tranclD2*)

**apply** *auto*

**done**

**lemma** *StepConf-Target-HAInitStates*:

$\llbracket S \in \text{StepConf } (HA \ ST) \ (Conf \ ST) \ TS; S \notin \text{Target } TS; S \notin \text{Conf } ST \rrbracket \implies S \in \text{HAInitStates } (HA \ ST)$

**apply** (*unfold StepConf-def*)

**apply** *auto*

**apply** (*frule tranclD2*)

**apply** *auto*

**done**

**lemma** *InitSucState-StepConf*:

$\llbracket TS \in \text{HPT } ST; S \notin \text{Target } TS; A \in \text{the } (CompFun \ (HA \ ST) \ S);$   
 $S \notin \text{Conf } ST; S \in \text{StepConf } (HA \ ST) \ (Conf \ ST) \ TS \rrbracket \implies$   
 $InitState \ A \in \text{StepConf } (HA \ ST) \ (Conf \ ST) \ TS$

**apply** (*frule StepConf-HAStates [THEN subsetD, THEN CompFun-HAInitStates-HAStates]*)

**apply** *fast+*

**apply** (*subst (asm) StepConf-def*)

**apply** *safe*

**apply** (*unfold StepConf-def*)

**apply** (*fast intro: HAInitStates-InitState-trancl*)

**apply** (*frule trancl-Int-mem, fold ChiPlus-def*)

**apply** (*fast intro: ChiPlus-HAStates-Right [THEN HAInitStates-InitState-trancl2]*)

**done**

**lemma** *InitSucState-Target-StepConf*:

$\llbracket TS \in \text{HPT } ST; S \in \text{Target } TS; A \in \text{the } (CompFun \ (HA \ ST) \ S) \rrbracket \implies$   
 $InitState \ A \in \text{StepConf } (HA \ ST) \ (Conf \ ST) \ TS$

**apply** (*frule HPT-Target-HAStates2 [THEN CompFun-HAInitStates-HAStates]*)

**apply** *fast+*

**apply** (*frule HPT-Target-HAStates2 [THEN CompFun-ChiRel]*)

**apply** (*fast intro: InitState-States+*)

**apply** (*unfold StepConf-def*)

**apply** *auto*

**done**

**lemma** *InitSucState-Conf-StepConf*:

$\llbracket TS \in \text{HPT } ST; S \in \text{StepConf } (HA \ ST) \ (Conf \ ST) \ TS;$   
 $S \notin \text{Target } TS; A \in \text{the } (CompFun \ (HA \ ST) \ S);$

```

     $S \in \text{Conf } ST; S \in \text{ChiStar } (HA \ ST) \text{ “ (Source } TS) \text{ ”} \implies$ 
     $\text{InitState } A \in \text{StepConf } (HA \ ST) \ (Conf \ ST) \ TS$ 
apply (frule Conf-HAStates2 [THEN CompFun-HAInitStates-HAStates])
apply fast
apply (subst (asm) StepConf-def)
apply safe
apply fast
apply (unfold StepConf-def)
apply (fast intro:HAInitStates-InitState-trancl)
apply (rename-tac T U V)
apply (frule trancl-Int-mem, fold ChiPlus-def, safe)
apply (subst (asm) Image-def, safe)
apply (rule-tac  $x=U$  in bexI)
apply (simp only: ChiPlus-HAStates-Right [THEN HAInitStates-InitState-trancl2])
apply fast
apply (subst (asm) Image-def, safe)
apply (rule-tac  $x=U$  in bexI)
apply (simp only: ChiPlus-HAStates-Right [THEN HAInitStates-InitState-trancl2])
apply fast
done

```

**lemma** *SucState-Conf-StepConf*:

```

  [  $TS \in \text{HPT } ST; S \in \text{StepConf } (HA \ ST) \ (Conf \ ST) \ TS;$ 
     $S \notin \text{Target } TS; A \in \text{the } (CompFun \ (HA \ ST) \ S);$ 
     $S \in \text{Conf } ST; \text{States } A \cap \text{ChiStar } (HA \ ST) \text{ “ (Source } TS) = \{\} \text{ ”} \implies$ 
     $\exists x. x \in \text{States } A \wedge x \in \text{StepConf } (HA \ ST) \ (Conf \ ST) \ TS$ 
apply (unfold StepConf-def)
apply (cut-tac  $ST=ST$  in UniqueSucStates-Status)
apply (unfold UniqueSucStates-def)
apply (cut-tac  $ST=ST$  in Conf-HAStates2)
apply fast
apply (fold HAStates-def)
apply (erule-tac  $x=S$  in balle)
apply (erule-tac  $x=A$  in balle)
apply simp
apply fast+
done

```

**lemma** *SucState-Conf-Source-StepConf*:

```

  [  $TS \in \text{HPT } ST; S \in \text{StepConf } (HA \ ST) \ (Conf \ ST) \ TS;$ 
     $S \notin \text{Target } TS; A \in \text{the } (CompFun \ (HA \ ST) \ S);$ 
     $S \in \text{Conf } ST; \text{States } A \cap \text{ChiStar } (HA \ ST) \text{ “ (Source } TS) \neq \{\};$ 
     $S \notin \text{ChiStar } (HA \ ST) \text{ “ (Source } TS) \text{ ”} \implies$ 
     $\exists x. x \in \text{States } A \wedge x \in \text{StepConf } (HA \ ST) \ (Conf \ ST) \ TS$ 
apply safe
apply (rename-tac T U)
apply (frule Conf-HAStates2 [THEN CompFun-ChiRel])
apply fast+
apply simp

```

```

apply (case-tac U=T)
apply simp
apply (rotate-tac -5)
apply (simp only:Source-def Target-def image-def)
apply safe
apply (rename-tac Source Trigger Guard Action Update Target)
apply (erule-tac x=Target in allE)
apply simp
apply (frule HPT-source-target2)
apply fast+
apply (rule HAStates-CompFun-SAs-mem)
apply (rule Conf-HAStates2)
apply fast+
apply (frule ChiStar-ChiPlus-noteq)
apply fast
apply (case-tac U=S)
apply (fast intro:ChiStar-Self ChiRel-ChiPlus-OneAncestor ChiPlus-ChiStar)+
done

```

**lemma** *SucState-StepConf*:

```

  [ TS ∈ HPT ST; S ∈ StepConf (HA ST) (Conf ST) TS;
    A ∈ the (CompFun (HA ST) S) ] ⇒
    ∃ x. x ∈ States A ∧ x ∈ StepConf (HA ST) (Conf ST) TS
apply (case-tac S ∈ Target TS)
apply (fast intro: InitSucState-Target-StepConf InitState-States)
apply (case-tac S ∈ Conf ST)
prefer 2
apply (fast intro: InitSucState-StepConf InitState-States)
apply (case-tac S ∈ ChiStar (HA ST) “(Source TS)”)
apply (fast intro: InitSucState-Conf-StepConf InitState-States)
apply (case-tac States A ∩ ChiStar (HA ST) “(Source TS) = { }”)
apply (fast intro: SucState-Conf-StepConf SucState-Conf-Source-StepConf)+
done

```

### 8.2.18 StepStatus

**lemma** *StepStatus-expand*:

```

  Abs-status (HA ST, StepConf (HA ST) (Conf ST) TS,
    StepActEvent TS, U !!! (Value ST))
  = (StepStatus ST TS U)
apply (unfold StepStatus-def Let-def)
apply (subst Rep-status-tuple)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** *UniqueSucState-Conf-Source-StepConf*:

```

  [ TS ∈ HPT ST; S ∈ StepConf (HA ST) (Conf ST) TS; A ∈ SAs (HA ST);
    A ∈ the (CompFun (HA ST) S); T ∈ States A; U ∈ States A;
    T ∈ StepConf (HA ST) (Conf ST) TS; T ≠ U; U ∈ Conf ST ] ⇒

```

$U \in \text{ChiStar } (HA \ ST) \text{ “ Source } TS$   
**apply** (*frule-tac*  $?S2.0=T$  **in** *StepConf-HAStates* [*THEN subsetD*, *THEN Comp-Fun-ChiRel*])  
**apply** *fast+*  
**apply** (*frule-tac*  $?S2.0=U$  **in** *StepConf-HAStates* [*THEN subsetD*, *THEN Comp-Fun-ChiRel*])  
**apply** *fast+*  
**apply** (*frule-tac*  $S=S$  **and**  $T=U$  **in** *Conf-ChiRel*, *fast*)  
**apply** (*case-tac*  $S \in \text{ChiStar } (HA \ ST) \text{ “ Source } TS$ )  
**apply** (*fast intro*: *ChiRel-ChiStar-trans*)  
**apply** (*case-tac*  $U \in \text{Source } TS$ )  
**apply** *force*  
**apply** (*unfold StepConf-def*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** *safe*  
**apply** (*fast intro*: *HPT-SAStates-Target-Source*)  
**apply** (*rename-tac*  $V$ )  
**apply** (*case-tac*  $V=S$ )  
**apply** (*frule-tac*  $S=S$  **in** *HPT-Conf-Target-Source*, *fast+*)  
**apply** (*fast intro*: *ChiStar-Image ChiRel-OneAncestor*)  
**apply** (*rename-tac*  $V \ W$ )  
**apply** (*frule* *trancl-Int-mem*, *fold ChiPlus-def*, *safe*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac*  $ST=ST$  **and**  $S=S$  **in** *HPT-Conf-Target-Source-ChiPlus*)  
**apply** *fast+*  
**apply** (*simp only*:*Image-def*, *safe*)  
**apply** (*case-tac*  $(V, T) \notin \text{ChiRel } (HA \ ST)$ )  
**apply** (*frule-tac*  $S=V$  **and**  $T=T$  **in** *ChiPlus-ChiRel-Ex*)  
**apply** (*fast*, *safe*)  
**apply** (*rename-tac*  $X$ )  
**apply** (*case-tac*  $X=S$ )  
**apply** (*rule-tac*  $x=W$  **in** *bexI*)  
**prefer** 4  
**apply** (*case-tac*  $V=S$ )  
**prefer** 2  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*fast intro*: *ChiPlus-ChiRel ChiRel-ChiPlus-trans2 ChiRel-OneAncestor*)  
**done**

**lemma** *UniqueSucState-Target-StepConf*:

$\llbracket TS \in \text{HPT } ST; S \in \text{StepConf } (HA \ ST) \ (Conf \ ST) \ TS; A \in \text{SAs } (HA \ ST);$   
 $A \in \text{the } (CompFun \ (HA \ ST) \ S); T \in \text{States } A; U \in \text{States } A;$   
 $T \in \text{StepConf } (HA \ ST) \ (Conf \ ST) \ TS; T \neq U \rrbracket \implies$   
 $U \notin \text{Target } TS$

**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*frule-tac*  $ST=ST$  **in** *Target-StepConf*)  
**apply** (*subst* (*asm*) (2) *StepConf-def*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** *safe*  
**apply** (*cut-tac*  $TS=TS$  **and**  $ST=ST$  **and**  $S=S$  **and**  $T=U$  **in** *UniqueSucState-Conf-Source-StepConf*)

**apply** *fast+*  
**apply** (*simp add: OneState-HPT-Target*)  
**apply** (*simp only: OneState-HPT-Target-ChiRel*)  
**apply** (*rename-tac V W*)  
**apply** (*frule-tac U=W and S=V and T=T in ChiRel-ChiPlus-trans2*)  
**apply** (*frule trancl-Int-mem, fold ChiPlus-def, force*)  
**apply** (*simp only: OneState-HPT-Target-ChiPlus*)  
**done**

**lemma** *UniqueSucState-Target-ChiRel-StepConf*:

$\llbracket TS \in \text{HPT } ST; S \in \text{StepConf } (HA \text{ } ST) (Conf \text{ } ST) \text{ } TS; A \in \text{SAs } (HA \text{ } ST);$   
 $A \in \text{the } (CompFun \text{ } (HA \text{ } ST) \text{ } S); T \in \text{States } A; U \in \text{States } A;$   
 $T \in \text{StepConf } (HA \text{ } ST) (Conf \text{ } ST) \text{ } TS; T \neq U; (V, U) \in \text{ChiRel } (HA \text{ } ST);$   
 $U \in \text{HAINitStates } (HA \text{ } ST) \rrbracket$   
 $\implies V \notin \text{Target } TS$

**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*frule-tac A=HA ST and C=Conf ST in Target-ChiRel-HAINit-StepConf*)  
**apply** *fast+*  
**apply** (*subst (asm) (2) StepConf-def, safe*)  
**apply** (*fast intro: UniqueSucState-Conf-Source-StepConf*)  
**apply** (*simp only: OneState-HPT-Target-ChiRel*)  
**apply** (*fast intro: OneHAINitState-SASates*)  
**apply** (*frule trancl-Int-mem, fold ChiPlus-def*)  
**apply** (*fast intro: OneHAINitState-SASates*)  
**done**

**lemma** *UniqueSucState-Target-ChiPlus-StepConf [rule-format]*:

$\llbracket TS \in \text{HPT } ST; (S, T) \in \text{ChiRel } (HA \text{ } ST); (S, U) \in \text{ChiRel } (HA \text{ } ST);$   
 $V \in \text{Target } TS; (V, W) \in \text{ChiRel } (HA \text{ } ST); T \notin \text{ChiStar } (HA \text{ } ST) \text{ “ Source}$   
 $TS;$   
 $(W, U) \in (\text{ChiRel } (HA \text{ } ST) \cap \text{HAINitStates } (HA \text{ } ST) \times \text{HAINitStates } (HA$   
 $ST))^+;$   
 $T \in \text{Conf } ST \rrbracket \implies (S, U) \in \text{ChiRel } (HA \text{ } ST) \longrightarrow T=U$

**apply** (*frule-tac S=S and T=T in Conf-ChiRel*)  
**apply** *fast*  
**apply** (*rule-tac a=W and b=U and r=ChiRel (HA ST) \cap HAINitStates (HA*  
 $ST) \times \text{HAINitStates } (HA \text{ } ST) \text{ in trancl-induct}$ )  
**apply** *safe*  
**apply** (*rename-tac X*)  
**apply** (*case-tac W=S*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**prefer** 2  
**apply** (*simp add: ChiRel-OneAncestor*)  
**prefer** 2  
**apply** (*rename-tac X Y*)  
**apply** (*case-tac X=S*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**prefer** 2  
**apply** (*simp add: ChiRel-OneAncestor*)

```

prefer 2
apply (frule-tac  $a=V$  in ChiRel-HAStates)
apply (unfold HAStates-def)
apply (simp,safe)
apply (rename-tac  $Y$ )
apply (case-tac  $States\ Y \cap Source\ TS = \{\}$ )
apply (simp add:OneState-HPT-Target-Source)
apply (subst (asm) Int-def, safe)
apply (rename-tac  $Z$ )
apply (frule-tac  $S=V$  and  $T=S$  in Conf-ChiRel)
apply fast
apply (frule HPT-Conf-Target-Source)
prefer 2
apply fast
apply fast
apply (frule-tac  $S=Z$  and  $T=V$  in OneState-HPT-SA)
apply fast+
apply simp
apply (fast intro: ChiPlus-ChiRel ChiRel-ChiPlus-trans ChiPlus-ChiStar)
apply (simp add: Image-def)
apply (frule trancl-Int-mem, fold ChiPlus-def, simp, safe)
back
apply (frule-tac  $T=W$  and  $S=S$  in Conf-ChiPlus)
apply simp
apply (frule-tac  $S=V$  and  $T=W$  in Conf-ChiRel)
apply fast
apply (frule-tac  $a=V$  in ChiRel-HAStates)
apply (unfold HAStates-def)
apply (simp, safe)
apply (rename-tac  $Z$ )
apply (case-tac  $States\ Z \cap Source\ TS = \{\}$ )
apply (simp add:OneState-HPT-Target-Source)
apply (subst (asm) Int-def, safe)
apply (frule-tac  $S=V$  in HPT-Conf-Target-Source)
apply fast+
apply (rename-tac  $P$ )
apply (frule-tac  $S=P$  and  $T=V$  in OneState-HPT-SA)
apply fast+
apply (frule-tac  $U=V$  and  $S=W$  and  $T=S$  in ChiRel-ChiPlus-trans2)
apply fast+
apply (fast intro: ChiPlus-ChiRel ChiRel-ChiPlus-trans ChiPlus-ChiStar)
apply (case-tac  $T=S$ )
apply (simp add: ChiRel-OneAncestor)+
done

```

**lemma** *UniqueSucStates-SAStates-StepConf*:

$$\llbracket TS \in HPT\ ST; S \in StepConf\ (HA\ ST)\ (Conf\ ST)\ TS; A \in SAs\ (HA\ ST); \\ A \in the\ (CompFun\ (HA\ ST)\ S); T \in States\ A; U \in States\ A; \\ T \in StepConf\ (HA\ ST)\ (Conf\ ST)\ TS; T \neq U \rrbracket \implies$$

```

    U ∉ StepConf (HA ST) (Conf ST) TS
  apply (subst StepConf-def)
  apply (simp, safe)
  apply (rule UniqueSucState-Conf-Source-StepConf)
  apply fast+
  apply (frule-tac U=U in UniqueSucState-Target-StepConf)
  apply fast+
  apply (frule-tac U=U in UniqueSucState-Target-ChiRel-StepConf)
  apply fast+
  apply (rename-tac V W)
  apply (frule trancl-Int-mem, fold ChiPlus-def)
  apply (simp, safe)
  apply (frule-tac ?S2.0=T in StepConf-HAStates [THEN subsetD, THEN Comp-
    Fun-ChiRel])
  apply fast+
  apply (frule-tac ?S2.0=U in StepConf-HAStates [THEN subsetD, THEN Comp-
    Fun-ChiRel])
  apply fast+
  apply (subst (asm) (2) StepConf-def)
  apply (simp, safe)
  apply (fast intro: UniqueSucState-Target-ChiPlus-StepConf)
  apply (frule-tac U=W and T=U and S=T in OneState-HPT-Target-ChiPlus)
  apply (fast intro: ChiPlus-ChiRel ChiRel-ChiPlus-trans2 OneHAInitState-SASates)+
  apply (frule trancl-Int-mem, fold ChiPlus-def, simp, safe)
  apply (fast intro: OneHAInitState-SASates)
done

```

**lemma** *UniqueSucStates-Ancestor-StepConf*:

```

  [[ TS ∈ HPT ST; S ∈ HAStates (HA ST); SA ∈ the (CompFun (HA ST) S);
    T ∈ States SA; T ∈ StepConf (HA ST) (Conf ST) TS ]]
  ⇒ S ∈ StepConf (HA ST) (Conf ST) TS
  apply (rule notnotD, rule notI)
  apply (subst (asm) StepConf-def)
  apply (simp, safe)
  apply (frule CompFun-ChiRel, fast+)
  apply (frule Conf-ChiRel, fast)
  apply (frule ChiRel-ChiStar-Source-notmem, fast+)
  apply (subst (asm) StepConf-def)
  apply force
  apply (case-tac States SA ∩ Source TS = {})
  apply (simp add: OneState-HPT-Target-Source)
  apply (subst (asm) Int-def)
  apply (simp, safe)
  apply (rename-tac U)
  apply (frule-tac ?S2.0=U in CompFun-ChiRel, fast+)
  apply (frule Conf-ChiRel)
  apply (frule HPT-Source-Conf, fast)
  apply (case-tac S ∈ ChiStar (HA ST) “ Source TS)
  apply (subst (asm) StepConf-def)

```

```

apply simp
apply (frule ChiRel-ChiStar-notmem)
apply fast+
apply (case-tac  $U=S$ )
apply (subst (asm) StepConf-def)
apply force
apply (subst (asm) StepConf-def)
apply force
apply (rename-tac  $U$ )
apply (case-tac  $U=S$ )
apply (subst (asm) StepConf-def)
apply force
apply (frule CompFun-ChiRel, fast+)
apply (simp add: ChiRel-OneAncestor)
apply (rename-tac  $U V$ )
apply (frule trancl-Int-mem, fold ChiPlus-def, simp, safe)
apply (frule tranclD2)
apply safe
apply (rename-tac  $W$ )
apply (case-tac  $W=S$ )
apply simp
prefer 2
apply (frule CompFun-ChiRel, fast+)
apply (simp only: ChiRel-OneAncestor)
apply (subst (asm) StepConf-def)
apply safe
apply (simp add: Image-def)
apply (erule-tac  $x=U$  in ballE)
apply (case-tac  $U=S$ )
apply fast
apply (simp add: rtrancl-eq-or-trancl)
apply fast
apply (simp add: Image-def)
apply (rename-tac  $W$ )
apply (erule-tac  $x=U$  in ballE)
apply (simp add: rtrancl-eq-or-trancl)
apply fast+
done

```

**lemma** *UniqueSucStates-StepConf*:

```

   $\llbracket TS \in HPT ST \rrbracket \implies$ 
     $UniqueSucStates (SAs (HA ST)) (CompFun (HA ST)) (StepConf (HA ST))$ 
  (Conf  $ST$ )  $TS$ )
apply (unfold UniqueSucStates-def)
apply auto
apply (simp only: SucState-StepConf)
apply (rule notnotD, rule notI)
apply (frule UniqueSucStates-SASates-StepConf)
apply fast

```

```

prefer 2
apply fast
apply (rule HAStates-CompFun-SAs-mem)
prefer 2
apply fast
apply (simp only: HAStates-def, fast)
apply fast+
back
apply (frule UniqueSucStates-Ancestor-StepConf)
prefer 2
apply fast
apply (simp only:HAStates-def, fast)
apply fast+
done

```

**lemma** *Status-Step*:

```

  [  $TS \in \text{HPT } ST; U \in \text{ResolveRacing } TS$  ]  $\implies$ 
  ( $HA \text{ } ST, \text{StepConf } (HA \text{ } ST) (\text{Conf } ST) \text{ } TS, \text{StepActEvent } TS, U \text{ !!! } (Value$ 
 $ST)) \in \text{status}$ 
apply (unfold status-def Status-def)
apply auto
apply (frule StepActEvent-HAEvents)
apply blast
apply (unfold IsConfSet-def)
apply (rule conjI, frule StepConf-HAStates, unfold HAStates-def, assumption)
apply (rule conjI, rule RootExSem-StepConf, assumption)
apply (rule UniqueSucStates-StepConf, assumption)
done

```

### 8.3 Meta Theorem: Preservation for Statecharts

**lemma** *IsConfSet-StepConf*:

```

   $TS \in \text{HPT } ST \implies \text{IsConfSet } (SAs \text{ } (HA \text{ } ST)) (\text{CompFun } (HA \text{ } ST))$ 
  ( $\text{StepConf } (HA \text{ } ST) (\text{Conf } ST) \text{ } TS$ )
apply (unfold IsConfSet-def)
apply auto
apply (frule StepConf-HAStates)
apply (unfold HAStates-def, fast)
apply (rule RootExSem-StepConf, assumption)
apply (rule UniqueSucStates-StepConf, assumption)
done

```

**lemma** *HA-StepStatus-HPT-ResolveRacing* [*simp*]:

```

  [  $TS \in \text{HPT } ST; U \in \text{ResolveRacing } TS$  ]  $\implies$ 
   $HA (\text{StepStatus } ST \text{ } TS \text{ } U) = HA \text{ } ST$ 
apply (subst StepStatus-expand [THEN sym])
apply (subst HA-def)
apply auto
apply (subst Abs-status-inverse)

```

```

apply auto
apply (rule Status-Step)
apply auto
done

end

```

## 9 Kripke Structures and CTL

```

theory Kripke
imports Main
begin

```

**definition**

```

Kripke :: ['s set,
           's set,
           ('s * 's) set,
           ('s  $\rightarrow$  'a set)]
        => bool where

```

```

Kripke S S0 R L =
  (S0  $\subseteq$  S  $\wedge$ 
   R  $\leq$  S  $\times$  S  $\wedge$ 
   (Domain R) = S  $\wedge$ 
   (dom L) = S)

```

**lemma** *Kripke-EmptySet*:

```

({@x. True}, {@x. True}, {@(x. True, @x. True)}, Map.empty(@x. True  $\mapsto$  {@x.
True}))  $\in$ 

```

```

  {(S,S0,R,L) | S S0 R L. Kripke S S0 R L}

```

**by** (*unfold Kripke-def Domain-unfold, auto*)

**definition**

```

kripke =
  {(S,S0,T,L) |
   (S::('s set))
   (S0::('s set))
   (T::(('s * 's) set))
   (L::('s  $\rightarrow$  ('a set)))}.
   Kripke S S0 T L}

```

**typedef** ('s,'a) *kripke* =

```

  kripke :: ('s set * 's set * ('s * 's) set * ('s  $\rightarrow$  'a set)) set

```

**unfolding** *kripke-def*

**apply** (*rule exI*)

**apply** (*rule Kripke-EmptySet*)

**done**

**definition**

*Statuses* :: ('s,'a) kripke => 's set **where**  
*Statuses* = fst o Rep-kripke

**definition**

*InitStatuses* :: ('s,'a) kripke => 's set **where**  
*InitStatuses* == fst o snd o Rep-kripke

**definition**

*StepRel* :: ('s,'a) kripke => ('s \* 's) set **where**  
*StepRel* == fst o snd o snd o Rep-kripke

**definition**

*LabelFun* :: ('s,'a) kripke => ('s  $\rightarrow$  'a set) **where**  
*LabelFun* == snd o snd o snd o Rep-kripke

**definition**

*Paths* :: [('s,'a) kripke, 's] =>  
(nat => 's) set **where**  
*Paths M S* == { p . S = p (0::nat)  $\wedge$  ( $\forall$  i. (p i, p (i+1))  $\in$  (StepRel M)) }

**datatype** ('s,'a) ctl = Atom 'a

- | AND ('s,'a) ctl ('s,'a) ctl
- | OR ('s,'a) ctl ('s,'a) ctl
- | IMPLIES ('s,'a) ctl ('s,'a) ctl
- | CAX ('s,'a) ctl
- | AF ('s,'a) ctl
- | AG ('s,'a) ctl
- | AU ('s,'a) ctl ('s,'a) ctl
- | AR ('s,'a) ctl ('s,'a) ctl

**primrec**

*eval-ctl* :: [('s,'a) kripke, 's, ('s,'a) ctl] => bool ( $\langle \_, - \rangle$  |=c=  $\rightarrow$  [92,91,90]90)

**where**

- | (M,S |=c= (Atom P)) = (P  $\in$  the ((LabelFun M) S))
- | (M,S |=c= (AND F1 F2)) = ((M,S |=c= F1)  $\wedge$  (M,S |=c= F2))
- | (M,S |=c= (OR F1 F2)) = ((M,S |=c= F1)  $\vee$  (M,S |=c= F2))
- | (M,S |=c= (IMPLIES F1 F2)) = ((M,S |=c= F1)  $\longrightarrow$  (M,S |=c= F2))
- | (M,S |=c= (CAX F)) = ( $\forall$  T. (S,T)  $\in$  (StepRel M)  $\longrightarrow$  (M,T |=c= F))
- | (M,S |=c= (AF F)) = ( $\forall$  P  $\in$  Paths M S.  $\exists$  i. (M,(P i) |=c= F))
- | (M,S |=c= (AG F)) = ( $\forall$  P  $\in$  Paths M S.  $\forall$  i. (M,(P i) |=c= F))
- | (M,S |=c= (AU F G)) = ( $\forall$  P  $\in$  Paths M S.  
 $\exists$  i. (M,(P i) |=c= G)  $\wedge$   
( $\forall$  j. j < i  $\longrightarrow$  (M,(P j) |=c= F)))
- | (M,S |=c= (AR F G)) = ( $\forall$  P  $\in$  Paths M S.  
 $\forall$  i. (M,(P i) |=c= G)  $\vee$   
( $\exists$  j. j < i  $\wedge$  (M,(P j) |=c= F)))

end

## 10 Kripke Structures as Hierarchical Automata

theory *HAKripke*

imports *HASem Kripke*

begin

**type-synonym**  $(\prime s, \prime e, \prime d)hakripke = ((\prime s, \prime e, \prime d)status, (\prime s, \prime e, \prime d)atomar)kripke$

**type-synonym**  $(\prime s, \prime e, \prime d)hactl = ((\prime s, \prime e, \prime d)status, (\prime s, \prime e, \prime d)atomar)ctl$

**definition**

$LabelFunSem :: (\prime s, \prime e, \prime d)hierauto$

$=> ((\prime s, \prime e, \prime d)status \rightarrow (((\prime s, \prime e, \prime d) atomar) set))$  **where**

$LabelFunSem a = (\lambda ST.$

$(if (HA ST = a) then$

$(let$

$In-preds = (\lambda s. (IN s)) \prime (Conf ST);$

$En-preds = (\lambda e. (EN e)) \prime (Events ST);$

$Val-preds = \{ x . (\exists P. (x = (VAL P)) \wedge P (Value ST)) \}$

$in$

$Some (In-preds \cup En-preds \cup Val-preds \cup \{atomar.TRUE\})$

$else$

$None))$

**definition**

$HA2Kripke :: (\prime s, \prime e, \prime d)hierauto => (\prime s, \prime e, \prime d)hakripke$  **where**

$HA2Kripke a =$

$Abs-kripke (\{ST. HA ST = a\},$

$\{InitStatus a\},$

$StepRelSem a,$

$LabelFunSem a)$

**definition**

$eval-ctl-HA :: [(\prime s, \prime e, \prime d)hierauto, (\prime s, \prime e, \prime d)hactl]$

$=> bool (\prime - \prime =H= \rightarrow [92,91]90)$  **where**

$eval-ctl-HA a f = ((HA2Kripke a), (InitStatus a) \prime =c= f)$

**lemma** *Kripke-HA* [*simp*]:

$Kripke \{ST. HA ST = a\} \{InitStatus a\} (StepRelSem a) (LabelFunSem a)$

**apply** (*unfold Kripke-def*)

**apply** *auto*

**apply** (*unfold StepRelSem-def*)

**apply** *auto*

**apply** (*unfold LabelFunSem-def Let-def If-def dom-def*)

**apply** *auto*

**prefer** 2

**apply** (*rename-tac ST S*)

```

apply (case-tac HA ST = a)
apply auto
apply (rename-tac ST)
apply (case-tac HPT ST = {})
apply auto
apply (rename-tac TSS)
apply (erule-tac x=StepStatus ST TSS (@ u. u : ResolveRacing TSS) in allE)
apply (erule-tac x=TSS in ballE)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma LabelFun-LabelFunSem [simp]:
  (LabelFun (HA2Kripke a)) = (LabelFunSem a)
apply (unfold HA2Kripke-def LabelFun-def)
apply auto
apply (subst Abs-kripke-inverse)
apply auto
apply (unfold kripke-def)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma InitStatuses-InitStatus [simp]:
  (InitStatuses (HA2Kripke a)) = {(InitStatus a)}
apply (unfold HA2Kripke-def InitStatuses-def)
apply simp
apply (subst Abs-kripke-inverse)
apply (unfold kripke-def)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma Statuses-StatusesOfHA [simp]:
  (Statuses (HA2Kripke a)) = {ST. HA ST = a}
apply (unfold HA2Kripke-def Statuses-def)
apply simp
apply (subst Abs-kripke-inverse)
apply (unfold kripke-def)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma StepRel-StepRelSem [simp]:
  (StepRel (HA2Kripke a)) = (StepRelSem a)
apply (unfold HA2Kripke-def StepRel-def)
apply simp
apply (subst Abs-kripke-inverse)
apply (unfold kripke-def)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma TRUE-LabelFunSem [simp]:

```

$atomar.TRUE \in the (LabelFunSem (HA ST) ST)$   
**apply** (unfold LabelFunSem-def Let-def)  
**apply** auto  
**done**

**lemma** FALSE-LabelFunSem [simp]:  
 $atomar.FALSE \notin the (LabelFunSem (HA ST) ST)$   
**apply** (unfold LabelFunSem-def Let-def)  
**apply** auto  
**done**

**lemma** Conf-LabelFunSem [simp]:  
 $((IN S) \in the (LabelFunSem (HA ST) ST)) = (S \in (Conf ST))$   
**apply** (unfold LabelFunSem-def Let-def)  
**apply** auto  
**done**

**lemma** Events-LabelFunSem [simp]:  
 $((EN S) \in the (LabelFunSem (HA ST) ST)) = (S \in (Events ST))$   
**apply** (unfold LabelFunSem-def Let-def)  
**apply** auto  
**done**

**lemma** Value-LabelFunSem [simp]:  
 $((VAL P) \in the (LabelFunSem (HA ST) ST)) = (P (Value ST))$   
**apply** (unfold LabelFunSem-def Let-def)  
**apply** auto  
**done**

**lemma** AtomTRUE-EvalCTLHA [simp]:  
 $a \models H = (Atom (atomar.TRUE))$   
**apply** (unfold eval-ctl-HA-def)  
**apply** auto  
**apply** (subst HA-InitStatus [THEN sym])  
**apply** (rule TRUE-LabelFunSem)  
**done**

**lemma** AtomFalse-EvalCTLHA [simp]:  
 $\neg a \models H = (Atom (atomar.FALSE))$   
**apply** (unfold eval-ctl-HA-def)  
**apply** auto  
**apply** (subst (asm) HA-InitStatus [THEN sym])  
**apply** (simp only: FALSE-LabelFunSem)  
**done**

**lemma** Events-InitStatus-EvalCTLHA [simp]:  
 $(a \models H = (Atom (EN S))) = (S \in (Events (InitStatus a)))$   
**apply** (unfold eval-ctl-HA-def)  
**apply** simp

```

apply (subst HA-InitStatus [THEN sym])
apply (rule Events-LabelFunSem)
done

```

```

lemma Conf-InitStatus-EvalCTLHA [simp]:
  (a |=H= (Atom (IN S))) = (S ∈ (Conf (InitStatus a)))
apply (unfold eval-ctl-HA-def)
apply simp
apply (subst HA-InitStatus [THEN sym])
apply (subst Conf-LabelFunSem)
apply simp
done

```

```

lemma HAINitValue-EvalCTLHA [simp]:
  (a |=H= (Atom (VAL P))) = (P (HAINitValue a))
apply (unfold eval-ctl-HA-def)
apply simp
apply (subst HA-InitStatus [THEN sym])
apply (subst Value-LabelFunSem)
apply auto
done

```

end

## 11 Constructing Hierarchical Automata

```

theory HAOps
imports HA
begin

```

### 11.1 Constructing a Composition Function for a PseudoHA

**definition**

```

EmptyMap :: 's set => ('s → (('s,'e,'d)seqauto) set) where
EmptyMap S = (λ a . if a ∈ S then Some {} else None)

```

```

lemma EmptyMap-dom [simp]:
  dom (EmptyMap S) = S
by (unfold dom-def EmptyMap-def, auto)

```

```

lemma EmptyMap-ran [simp]:
  S ≠ {} ⇒ ran (EmptyMap S) = {{}}
by (unfold ran-def EmptyMap-def, auto)

```

```

lemma EmptyMap-the [simp]:
  x ∈ S ⇒ the ((EmptyMap S) x) = {}
by (unfold ran-def EmptyMap-def, auto)

```

```

lemma EmptyMap-ran-override:

```

```

[[ S ≠ {}; (S ∩ (dom G)) = {} ]] ⇒
  ran (G ++ EmptyMap S) = insert {} (ran G)
apply (subst ran-override)
apply (simp add: Int-commute)
apply simp
done

```

```

lemma EmptyMap-Union-ran-override:
[[ S ≠ {};
  S ∩ dom G = {} ]] ⇒
  (Union (ran (G ++ (EmptyMap S)))) = (Union (ran G))
apply (subst EmptyMap-ran-override)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma EmptyMap-Union-ran-override2:
[[ S ≠ {}; S ∩ dom G1 = {};
  dom G1 ∩ dom G2 = {} ]] ⇒
  ⋃ (ran (G1 ++ EmptyMap S ++ G2)) = (⋃ (ran G1 ∪ ran G2))
apply (unfold Union-eq UNION-eq EmptyMap-def Int-def ran-def)
apply (simp add: map-add-Some-iff)
apply (unfold dom-def)
apply simp
apply (rule equalityI)
apply (rule subsetI)
apply simp
apply fast
apply (rule subsetI)
apply (rename-tac t)
apply simp
apply (erule bexE)
apply (rename-tac U)
apply simp
apply (erule disjE)
apply (erule exE)
apply (rename-tac v)
apply (rule-tac x=U in exI)
apply simp
apply (rule-tac x=v in exI)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma EmptyMap-Root [simp]:
  Root {SA} (EmptyMap (States SA)) = SA
by (unfold Root-def, auto)

```

```

lemma EmptyMap-RootEx [simp]:
  RootEx {SA} (EmptyMap (States SA))
by (unfold RootEx-def, auto)

```

**lemma** *EmptyMap-OneAncestor* [simp]:  
*OneAncestor* {SA} (*EmptyMap* (*States* SA))  
**by** (*unfold OneAncestor-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *EmptyMap-NoCycles* [simp]:  
*NoCycles* {SA} (*EmptyMap* (*States* SA))  
**by** (*unfold NoCycles-def EmptyMap-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *EmptyMap-IsCompFun* [simp]:  
*IsCompFun* {SA} (*EmptyMap* (*States* SA))  
**by** (*unfold IsCompFun-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *EmptyMap-hierauto* [simp]:  
(*D*, {SA}, *SAEvents* SA, *EmptyMap* (*States* SA))  $\in$  *hierauto*  
**by** (*unfold hierauto-def HierAuto-def*, *auto*)

## 11.2 Extending a Composition Function by a SA

**definition**

$$\begin{aligned}
FAddSA &:: [(s \rightarrow ((s, 'e, 'd)seqauto) set), 's * (s, 'e, 'd)seqauto] \\
&=> (s \rightarrow ((s, 'e, 'd)seqauto) set) \\
&\langle (- [f+] / -) \rangle [10,11]10 \textbf{ where} \\
FAddSA \ G \ SSA &= (let (S, SA) = SSA \\
&\quad \textit{in} \\
&\quad \textit{if} ((S \in dom \ G) \wedge (S \notin States \ SA)) \textit{ then} \\
&\quad \quad (G ++ (Map.empty(S \mapsto (insert \ SA \ (the \ (G \ S)))))) \\
&\quad \quad ++ EmptyMap (States \ SA)) \\
&\quad \textit{else} \ G))
\end{aligned}$$

**lemma** *FAddSA-dom* [simp]:  
( $S \notin (dom \ (A::('a \Rightarrow ('a, 'c, 'd)seqauto \ set \ option)))$ )  $\implies$   
( $(A [f+] (S, (SA::('a, 'c, 'd)seqauto))) = A$ )  
**by** (*unfold FAddSA-def Let-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *FAddSA-States* [simp]:  
( $S \in (States \ (SA::('a, 'c, 'd)seqauto))$ )  $\implies$   
( $((A::('a \Rightarrow ('a, 'c, 'd)seqauto \ set \ option)) [f+] (S, SA)) = A$ )  
**by** (*unfold FAddSA-def Let-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *FAddSA-dom-insert* [simp]:  
 $\llbracket S \in (dom \ A); S \notin States \ SA \rrbracket \implies$   
( $((A [f+] (S, SA)) S) = Some \ (insert \ SA \ (the \ (A \ S)))$ )  
**by** (*unfold FAddSA-def Let-def restrict-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *FAddSA-States-neq* [simp]:  
 $\llbracket S' \notin States \ (SA::('a, 'c, 'd)seqauto); S \neq S' \rrbracket \implies$   
( $((A::('a \Rightarrow ('a, 'c, 'd)seqauto \ set \ option)) [f+] (S, SA)) S') = (A \ S')$ )  
**apply** (*case-tac S \in dom \ A*)

**apply** (*case-tac*  $S \in \text{States } SA$ )  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*case-tac*  $S' \in \text{dom } A$ )  
**apply** (*unfold* *FAddSA-def* *Let-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*simp* *add: dom-None*)  
**done**

**lemma** *FAddSA-dom-emptyset* [*simp*]:  
 $\llbracket S \in (\text{dom } A); S \notin \text{States } SA; S' \in \text{States } (SA::('a,'c,'d)\text{seqauto}) \rrbracket \implies$   
 $((A::('a \Rightarrow ('a,'c,'d)\text{seqauto } \text{set } \text{option}))) [f+] (S,SA) S' = (\text{Some } \{\})$   
**apply** (*unfold* *FAddSA-def* *Let-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*unfold* *EmptyMap-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *FAddSA-dom-dom-States* [*simp*]:  
 $\llbracket S \in (\text{dom } F); S \notin \text{States } SA \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(\text{dom } ((F::('a \rightarrow (('a,'b,'d)\text{seqauto}) \text{set})) [f+] (S, SA))) =$   
 $((\text{dom } F) \cup (\text{States } (SA::('a,'b,'d)\text{seqauto})))$   
**by** (*unfold* *FAddSA-def* *Let-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *FAddSA-dom-dom* [*simp*]:  
 $S \notin (\text{dom } F) \implies$   
 $(\text{dom } ((F::('a \rightarrow (('a,'b,'d)\text{seqauto}) \text{set})) [f+]$   
 $(S,(SA::('a,'b,'d)\text{seqauto})))) = (\text{dom } F)$   
**by** (*unfold* *FAddSA-def* *Let-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *FAddSA-States-dom* [*simp*]:  
 $S \in (\text{States } SA) \implies$   
 $(\text{dom } ((F::('a \rightarrow (('a,'b,'d)\text{seqauto}) \text{set})) [f+]$   
 $(S,(SA::('a,'b,'d)\text{seqauto})))) = (\text{dom } F)$   
**by** (*unfold* *FAddSA-def* *Let-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *FAddSA-dom-insert-dom-disjunct* [*simp*]:  
 $\llbracket S \in \text{dom } G; \text{States } SA \cap \text{dom } G = \{\} \rrbracket \implies ((G [f+] (S,SA)) S) = \text{Some}$   
 $(\text{insert } SA (\text{the } (G S)))$   
**apply** (*rule* *FAddSA-dom-insert*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *FAddSA-Union-ran*:  
 $\llbracket S \in \text{dom } G; (\text{States } SA) \cap (\text{dom } G) = \{\} \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(\bigcup (\text{ran } (G [f+] (S,SA)))) = (\text{insert } SA (\bigcup (\text{ran } G)))$   
**apply** (*unfold* *FAddSA-def* *Let-def*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*rule* *conjI*)  
**prefer** 2

```

apply (rule impI)
apply (unfold Int-def)
apply simp
apply (fold Int-def)
apply (rule impI)
apply (subst EmptyMap-Union-ran-override)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** *FAddSA-Union-ran2*:

```


$$\llbracket S \in \text{dom } G1; (\text{States } SA) \cap (\text{dom } G1) = \{\}; (\text{dom } G1 \cap \text{dom } G2) = \{\} \rrbracket \implies$$


$$(\bigcup (\text{ran } ((G1 [f+] (S,SA)) ++ G2))) = (\text{insert } SA (\bigcup ((\text{ran } G1) \cup (\text{ran } G2))))$$

apply (unfold FAddSA-def Let-def)
apply (simp (no-asm-simp))
apply (rule conjI)
apply (rule impI)
apply (subst EmptyMap-Union-ran-override2)
apply simp
apply simp
apply simp
apply fast
apply (subst Union-Un-distrib)
apply (subst Union-ran-override2)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** *FAddSA-ran*:

```


$$\llbracket \forall T \in \text{dom } G . T \neq S \longrightarrow (\text{the } (G T) \cap \text{the } (G S)) = \{\};$$


$$S \in \text{dom } G; (\text{States } SA) \cap (\text{dom } G) = \{\} \rrbracket \implies$$


$$\text{ran } (G [f+] (S,SA)) = \text{insert } \{\} (\text{insert } (\text{insert } SA (\text{the } (G S))) (\text{ran } G - \{\text{the } (G S)\}))$$

apply (unfold FAddSA-def Let-def)
apply simp
apply (rule conjI)
apply (rule impI)+
prefer 2
apply fast
apply (simp add: EmptyMap-ran-override)
apply (unfold ran-def)
apply auto
apply (rename-tac Y X a xa xb)
apply (erule-tac x=a in allE)
apply simp
apply (erule-tac x=a in allE)
apply simp
done

```

**lemma** *FAddSA-RootEx-def*:

```


$$\llbracket S \in \text{dom } G; (\text{States } SA) \cap (\text{dom } G) = \{\} \rrbracket \implies$$


```

$RootEx\ F\ (G\ [f+]\ (S,SA)) = (\exists! A . A \in F \wedge A \notin insert\ SA\ (\bigcup\ (ran\ G)))$   
**apply** (*unfold RootEx-def*)  
**apply** (*simp only: FAddSA-Union-ran Int-commute*)  
**done**

**lemma** *FAddSA-RootEx:*

$\llbracket \bigcup\ (ran\ G) = F - \{Root\ F\ G\};$   
 $dom\ G = \bigcup\ (States\ 'F);$   
 $(dom\ G \cap States\ SA) = \{\}; S \in dom\ G;$   
 $RootEx\ F\ G \rrbracket \implies RootEx\ (insert\ SA\ F)\ (G\ [f+]\ (S,SA))$   
**apply** (*simp add: FAddSA-RootEx-def Int-commute cong: rev-conj-cong*)  
**apply** (*auto cong: conj-cong*)  
**done**

**lemma** *FAddSA-Root-def:*

$\llbracket S \in dom\ G; (States\ SA) \cap (dom\ G) = \{\} \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(Root\ F\ (G\ [f+]\ (S,SA))) = (@\ A . A \in F \wedge A \notin insert\ SA\ (\bigcup\ (ran\ G)))$   
**apply** (*unfold Root-def*)  
**apply** (*simp only: FAddSA-Union-ran Int-commute*)  
**done**

**lemma** *FAddSA-RootEx-Root:*

$\llbracket Union\ (ran\ G) = F - \{Root\ F\ G\};$   
 $\bigcup\ (States\ 'F) = dom\ G;$   
 $(dom\ G \cap States\ SA) = \{\}; S \in dom\ G;$   
 $RootEx\ F\ G \rrbracket \implies (Root\ (insert\ SA\ F)\ (G\ [f+]\ (S,SA))) = (Root\ F\ G)$   
**apply** (*simp add: FAddSA-Root-def Int-commute cong: rev-conj-cong*)  
**apply** (*simp cong: conj-cong*)  
**done**

**lemma** *FAddSA-OneAncestor:*

$\llbracket \bigcup\ (ran\ G) = F - \{Root\ F\ G\};$   
 $(dom\ G \cap States\ SA) = \{\}; S \in dom\ G;$   
 $\bigcup\ (States\ 'F) = dom\ G; RootEx\ F\ G;$   
 $OneAncestor\ F\ G \rrbracket \implies OneAncestor\ (insert\ SA\ F)\ (G\ [f+]\ (S,SA))$   
**apply** (*subst OneAncestor-def*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*rule ballI*)  
**apply** (*rename-tac SAA*)  
**apply** (*case-tac SA = SAA*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac a=S in ex1I*)  
**apply** (*rule conjI*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** *fast*  
**apply** (*subst FAddSA-dom-insert*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*simp add: Int-def*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*rename-tac T*)

```

apply (erule conjE bexE exE disjE)+
apply (rename-tac SAAA)
apply simp
apply (erule conjE)
apply (subst not-not [THEN sym])
apply (rule notI)
apply (case-tac T ∈ States SAA)
apply blast
apply (drule-tac A=G and S=S and SA=SAA in FAddSA-States-neq)
apply fast
apply simp
apply (case-tac SAA ∉ Union (ran G))
apply (frule ran-dom-the)
prefer 2
apply fast
apply blast
apply simp
apply (erule conjE)
apply (simp add: States-Int-not-mem)
apply (unfold OneAncestor-def)
apply (drule-tac G=G and S=S and SA=SA in FAddSA-RootEx-Root)
apply simp
apply simp
apply simp
apply simp
apply (erule-tac x=SAA in ballE)
prefer 2
apply simp
apply simp
apply (erule conjE bexE ex1E exE disjE)+
apply (rename-tac T SAAA)
apply (rule-tac a=T in ex1I)
apply (rule conjI)
apply fast
apply (case-tac T = S)
apply simp
apply (case-tac S ∉ States SA)
apply simp
apply simp
apply (subst FAddSA-States-neq)
apply blast
apply (rule not-sym)
apply simp
apply simp
apply (rename-tac U)
apply simp
apply (erule conjE bexE)+
apply (rename-tac SAAAA)
apply simp

```

```

apply (erule conjE disjE)+
apply (frule FAddSA-dom-emptyset)
prefer 2
apply fast
back
back
apply simp
apply blast
apply simp
apply (erule-tac x=U in allE)
apply (erule impE)
prefer 2
apply simp
apply (rule conjI)
apply fast
apply (case-tac S ≠ U)
apply (subgoal-tac U ∉ States SA)
apply (drule-tac A=G in FAddSA-States-neq)
apply fast
apply simp
apply blast
apply (drule-tac A=G and SA=SA in FAddSA-dom-insert)
apply simp
apply blast
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma FAddSA-NoCycles:
  [| (States SA ∩ dom G) = {}; S ∈ dom G;
    dom G =  $\bigcup$  (States ' F); NoCycles F G |]  $\implies$ 
    NoCycles (insert SA F) (G [f+] (S,SA))
apply (unfold NoCycles-def)
apply (rule ballI impI)+
apply (rename-tac SAA)
apply (case-tac ∃ s ∈ SAA. s ∈ States SA)
apply simp
apply (erule bexE)+
apply (rename-tac SAAA T)
apply (rule-tac x=T in bexI)
apply simp
apply (subst FAddSA-dom-emptyset)
apply simp
apply fast
apply blast
apply simp
apply simp
apply simp
apply simp
apply (erule-tac x=SAA in ballE)

```

```

prefer 2
apply simp
apply auto[1]
apply (unfold UNION-eq Pow-def)
apply simp
apply (case-tac SAA = {})
apply fast
apply simp
apply (erule bexE)+
apply (rename-tac SAAA T)
apply (rule-tac x=T in beXI)
prefer 2
apply simp
apply (case-tac T=S)
apply simp
apply (subst FAddSA-dom-insert)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** *FAddSA-IsCompFun*:

```


$$\llbracket (States\ SA \cap (\bigcup (States\ 'F))) = \{\};$$


$$S \in (\bigcup (States\ 'F));$$


$$IsCompFun\ F\ G \rrbracket \implies IsCompFun\ (insert\ SA\ F)\ (G\ [f+]\ (S,SA))$$

apply (unfold IsCompFun-def)
apply (erule conjE)+
apply (simp add: Int-commute FAddSA-RootEx-Root FAddSA-RootEx FAddSA-OneAncestor  

FAddSA-NoCycles)
apply (rule conjI)
apply (subst FAddSA-dom-dom-States)
apply simp
apply blast
apply (simp add: Un-commute)
apply (simp add: FAddSA-Union-ran)
apply (case-tac SA = Root F G)
prefer 2
apply blast
apply (subgoal-tac States (Root F G)  $\subseteq$   $\bigcup (States\ 'F)$ )
apply simp
apply (erule subset-lemma)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** *FAddSA-HierAuto*:

```


$$\llbracket (States\ SA \cap (\bigcup (States\ 'F))) = \{\};$$


$$S \in (\bigcup (States\ 'F));$$


$$HierAuto\ D\ F\ E\ G \rrbracket \implies HierAuto\ D\ (insert\ SA\ F)\ (E \cup\ SAEvents\ SA)\ (G$$


$$[f+]\ (S,SA))$$

apply (unfold HierAuto-def)
apply auto

```

**apply** (*simp add: MutuallyDistinct-Insert*)  
**apply** (*rule FAddSA-IsCompFun*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *FAddSA-HierAuto-insert* [*simp*]:  
 $\llbracket (States\ SA \cap\ HAStates\ HA) = \{\};$   
 $S \in\ HAStates\ HA \rrbracket \implies$   
 $HierAuto\ (HAINitValue\ HA)$   
 $(insert\ SA\ (SAs\ HA))$   
 $(HAEvents\ HA \cup\ SAEvents\ SA)$   
 $(CompFun\ HA\ [f+]\ (S,SA))$   
**apply** (*unfold HAStates-def*)  
**apply** (*rule FAddSA-HierAuto*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

### 11.3 Constructing a PseudoHA

**definition**

*PseudoHA* :: [(*'s,'e,'d*)seqauto,*'d* data] => (*'s,'e,'d*)hierauto **where**  
*PseudoHA* SA D = *Abs-hierauto*(D,{SA}, *SAEvents* SA ,*EmptyMap* (States SA))

**lemma** *PseudoHA-SAs* [*simp*]:  
 $SAs\ (PseudoHA\ SA\ D) = \{SA\}$   
**by** (*unfold PseudoHA-def SAs-def, simp add: Abs-hierauto-inverse*)

**lemma** *PseudoHA-Events* [*simp*]:  
 $HAEvents\ (PseudoHA\ SA\ D) = SAEvents\ SA$   
**by** (*unfold PseudoHA-def HAEvents-def, simp add: Abs-hierauto-inverse*)

**lemma** *PseudoHA-CompFun* [*simp*]:  
 $CompFun\ (PseudoHA\ SA\ D) = EmptyMap\ (States\ SA)$   
**by** (*unfold PseudoHA-def CompFun-def, simp add: Abs-hierauto-inverse*)

**lemma** *PseudoHA-HAStates* [*simp*]:  
 $HAStates\ (PseudoHA\ SA\ D) = (States\ SA)$   
**by** (*unfold HAStates-def, auto*)

**lemma** *PseudoHA-HAINitValue* [*simp*]:  
 $(HAINitValue\ (PseudoHA\ SA\ D)) = D$   
**by** (*unfold PseudoHA-def Let-def HAINitValue-def, simp add: Abs-hierauto-inverse*)

**lemma** *PseudoHA-CompFun-the* [*simp*]:  
 $S \in\ States\ A \implies (the\ (CompFun\ (PseudoHA\ A\ D)\ S)) = \{\}$   
**by** *simp*

**lemma** *PseudoHA-CompFun-ran* [*simp*]:  
 $(ran\ (CompFun\ (PseudoHA\ SA\ D))) = \{\{\}\}$

**by** *auto*

**lemma** *PseudoHA-HARoot* [*simp*]:  
 $(\text{HARoot } (\text{PseudoHA } SA \ D)) = SA$   
**by** (*unfold HARoot-def*, *auto*)

**lemma** *PseudoHA-HAInitState* [*simp*]:  
 $\text{HAInitState } (\text{PseudoHA } A \ D) = \text{InitState } A$   
**apply** (*unfold HAINitState-def*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**done**

**lemma** *PseudoHA-HAInitStates* [*simp*]:  
 $\text{HAInitStates } (\text{PseudoHA } A \ D) = \{\text{InitState } A\}$   
**apply** (*unfold HAINitStates-def*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**done**

**lemma** *PseudoHA-Chi* [*simp*]:  
 $S \in \text{States } A \implies \text{Chi } (\text{PseudoHA } A \ D) \ S = \{\}$   
**apply** (*unfold Chi-def restrict-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *PseudoHA-ChiRel* [*simp*]:  
 $\text{ChiRel } (\text{PseudoHA } A \ D) = \{\}$   
**apply** (*unfold ChiRel-def*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**done**

**lemma** *PseudoHA-InitConf* [*simp*]:  
 $\text{InitConf } (\text{PseudoHA } A \ D) = \{\text{InitState } A\}$   
**apply** (*unfold InitConf-def*)  
**apply** *simp*  
**done**

## 11.4 Extending a HA by a SA (*AddSA*)

**definition**

$\text{AddSA} :: [(\text{'s}, \text{'e}, \text{'d})\text{hierauto}, \text{'s} * (\text{'s}, \text{'e}, \text{'d})\text{seqauto}]$   
 $\implies (\text{'s}, \text{'e}, \text{'d})\text{hierauto}$   
 $(\langle \text{'- } [++]/ \text{'-} \rangle [10, 11] 10) \text{ where}$   
 $\text{AddSA } HA \ SSA = (\text{let } (S, SA) = SSA;$   
 $\quad D_{\text{New}} = \text{HAInitValue } HA;$   
 $\quad F_{\text{New}} = \text{insert } SA \ (SAs \ HA);$   
 $\quad E_{\text{New}} = \text{HAEvents } HA \cup \text{SAEvents } SA;$   
 $\quad G_{\text{New}} = \text{CompFun } HA \ [f+] \ (S, SA)$   
 $\text{in}$   
 $\text{Abs-hierauto}(D_{\text{New}}, F_{\text{New}}, E_{\text{New}}, G_{\text{New}}))$

**definition**

```

AddHA :: [(s,'e','d)hierauto, 's * (s,'e','d)hierauto]
      => (s,'e','d)hierauto
      (⟨(- [*/] / -)⟩ [10,11]10) where
AddHA HA1 SHA =
  (let (S,HA2)    = SHA;
       (D1,F1,E1,G1) = Rep-hierauto (HA1 [++] (S,HARoot HA2));
       (D2,F2,E2,G2) = Rep-hierauto HA2;
       FNew        = F1 ∪ F2;
       ENew        = E1 ∪ E2;
       GNew        = G1 ++ G2
      in
      Abs-hierauto(D1,FNew,ENew,GNew))

```

**lemma AddSA-SAs:**

```

[[ (States SA ∩ HAStates HA) = {}];
  S ∈ HAStates HA ] ⇒ (SAs (HA [++] (S,SA))) = insert SA (SAs HA)
apply (unfold Let-def AddSA-def)
apply (subst SAs-def)
apply (simp add: hierauto-def Abs-hierauto-inverse)
done

```

**lemma AddSA-Events:**

```

[[ (States SA ∩ HAStates HA) = {}];
  S ∈ HAStates HA ] ⇒
  HAEvents (HA [++] (S,SA)) = (HAEvents HA) ∪ (SAEvents SA)
apply (unfold Let-def AddSA-def)
apply (subst HAEvents-def)
apply (simp add: hierauto-def Abs-hierauto-inverse)
done

```

**lemma AddSA-CompFun:**

```

[[ (States SA ∩ HAStates HA) = {}];
  S ∈ HAStates HA ] ⇒
  CompFun (HA [++] (S,SA)) = (CompFun HA [f+] (S,SA))
apply (unfold Let-def AddSA-def)
apply (subst CompFun-def)
apply (simp add: hierauto-def Abs-hierauto-inverse)
done

```

**lemma AddSA-HAStates:**

```

[[ (States SA ∩ HAStates HA) = {}];
  S ∈ HAStates HA ] ⇒
  HAStates (HA [++] (S,SA)) = (HAStates HA) ∪ (States SA)
apply (unfold HAStates-def)
apply (subst AddSA-SAs)
apply (unfold HAStates-def)
apply auto

```

**done**

**lemma** *AddSA-HAInitValue*:

$\llbracket (States\ SA \cap\ HAStates\ HA) = \{\};$   
 $S \in\ HAStates\ HA \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(HAInitValue\ (HA\ [++]\ (S,SA))) = (HAInitValue\ HA)$

**apply** (*unfold Let-def AddSA-def*)

**apply** (*subst HAINitValue-def*)

**apply** (*simp add: hierauto-def Abs-hierauto-inverse*)

**done**

**lemma** *AddSA-HARoot*:

$\llbracket (States\ SA \cap\ HAStates\ HA) = \{\};$   
 $S \in\ HAStates\ HA \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(HARoot\ (HA\ [++]\ (S,SA))) = (HARoot\ HA)$

**apply** (*unfold HARoot-def*)

**apply** (*simp add: AddSA-CompFun AddSA-SAs*)

**apply** (*subst FAddSA-RootEx-Root*)

**apply** *auto*

**apply** (*simp only: HAStates-SA-mem*)

**apply** (*unfold HAStates-def*)

**apply** *fast*

**done**

**lemma** *AddSA-CompFun-the*:

$\llbracket (States\ SA \cap\ HAStates\ A) = \{\};$   
 $S \in\ HAStates\ A \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(the\ ((CompFun\ (A\ [++]\ (S,SA)))\ S)) = insert\ SA\ (the\ ((CompFun\ A)\ S))$

**by** (*simp add: AddSA-CompFun*)

**lemma** *AddSA-CompFun-the2*:

$\llbracket S' \in\ States\ (SA::('a,'c,'d)seqauto);$   
 $(States\ SA \cap\ HAStates\ A) = \{\};$   
 $S \in\ HAStates\ A \rrbracket \implies$   
 $the\ ((CompFun\ (A\ [++]\ (S,SA)))\ S') = \{\}$

**apply** (*simp add: AddSA-CompFun*)

**apply** (*subst FAddSA-dom-emptyset*)

**apply** *auto*

**done**

**lemma** *AddSA-CompFun-the3*:

$\llbracket S' \notin\ States\ (SA::('a,'c,'d)seqauto);$   
 $S \neq S';$   
 $(States\ SA \cap\ HAStates\ A) = \{\};$   
 $S \in\ HAStates\ A \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(the\ ((CompFun\ (A\ [++]\ (S,SA)))\ S')) = (the\ ((CompFun\ A)\ S'))$

**by** (*simp add: AddSA-CompFun*)

**lemma** *AddSA-CompFun-ran*:

```

[[ (States SA ∩ HASates A) = {};
  S ∈ HASates A ]] ⇒
  ran (CompFun (A [++] (S,SA))) =
    insert {} (insert (insert SA (the ((CompFun A) S))) (ran (CompFun A) –
{the ((CompFun A) S)}))
apply (simp add: AddSA-CompFun)
apply (subst FAddSA-ran)
apply auto
apply (fast dest: CompFun-Int-disjoint)
done

```

**lemma** AddSA-CompFun-ran2:

```

[[ (States SA1 ∩ HASates A) = {};
  (States SA2 ∩ (HASates A ∪ States SA1)) = {};
  S ∈ HASates A;
  T ∈ States SA1 ]] ⇒
  ran (CompFun ((A [++] (S,SA1)) [++] (T,SA2))) =
    insert {} (insert {SA2} (ran (CompFun (A [++] (S,SA1))))))
apply (simp add: AddSA-HASates AddSA-CompFun)
apply (subst FAddSA-ran)
apply (rule ballI)
apply (rule impI)
apply (subst AddSA-CompFun [THEN sym])
apply simp
apply simp
apply (subst AddSA-CompFun [THEN sym])
apply simp
apply simp
apply (rule CompFun-Int-disjoint)
apply simp
apply (simp add: AddSA-HASates)
apply (simp add: AddSA-HASates)
apply (case-tac S ∈ States SA1)
apply simp
apply (simp only: dom-CompFun [THEN sym])
apply (frule FAddSA-dom-dom-States)
apply fast
apply simp
apply (case-tac S ∈ States SA1)
apply simp
apply fast
apply (subst FAddSA-dom-dom-States)
apply simp
apply simp
apply simp
apply (case-tac S ∈ States SA1)
apply simp
apply fast
apply (subst FAddSA-dom-dom-States)

```

**apply simp**  
**apply simp**  
**apply simp**  
**apply (case-tac  $S \in \text{States } SA1$ )**  
**apply simp**  
**apply fast**  
**apply simp**  
**apply fast**  
**done**

**lemma AddSA-CompFun-ran-not-mem:**  
 $\llbracket \text{States } SA2 \cap (\text{HAsStates } A \cup \text{States } SA1) = \{\};$   
 $\text{States } SA1 \cap \text{HAsStates } A = \{\};$   
 $S \in \text{HAsStates } A \rrbracket \implies$   
 $\{SA2\} \notin \text{ran } (\text{CompFun } A [f+](S, SA1))$   
**apply (cut-tac  $HA=A [++](S, SA1)$  and  $Sas=\{SA2\}$  in  $\text{ran-CompFun-is-not-SA}$ )**  
**apply (metis AddSA-HAsStates SA-States-disjunct2 SAs-States-HAsStates insert-subset)**  
**apply (simp add: AddSA-HAsStates AddSA-CompFun)**  
**done**

**lemma AddSA-CompFun-ran3:**  
 $\llbracket (\text{States } SA1 \cap \text{HAsStates } A) = \{\};$   
 $(\text{States } SA2 \cap (\text{HAsStates } A \cup \text{States } SA1)) = \{\};$   
 $(\text{States } SA3 \cap (\text{HAsStates } A \cup \text{States } SA1 \cup \text{States } SA2)) = \{\};$   
 $S \in \text{HAsStates } A;$   
 $T \in \text{States } SA1 \rrbracket \implies$   
 $\text{ran } (\text{CompFun } ((A [++](S, SA1)) [++](T, SA2) [++](T, SA3))) =$   
 $\text{insert } \{\} (\text{insert } \{SA3, SA2\} (\text{ran } (\text{CompFun } (A [++](S, SA1)))))$   
**apply (simp add: AddSA-HAsStates AddSA-CompFun)**  
**apply (subst FAddSA-ran)**  
**apply (metis AddSA-CompFun AddSA-HAsStates CompFun-Int-disjoint UnCI**  
 $\text{dom-CompFun})$   
**apply (metis AddSA-CompFun AddSA-HAsStates UnCI dom-CompFun)**  
**apply (metis AddSA-CompFun AddSA-HAsStates UnCI dom-CompFun)**

**apply (subst AddSA-CompFun [THEN sym])**  
**back**  
**apply simp**  
**apply simp**

**apply (subst AddSA-CompFun [THEN sym])**  
**back**  
**apply (simp add: AddSA-HAsStates)**  
**apply (simp add: AddSA-HAsStates)**  
**apply (subst AddSA-CompFun-ran2)**  
**apply fast**  
**apply fast**  
**apply fast**  
**apply fast**

```

apply (simp add: AddSA-CompFun)
apply (subst FAddSA-dom-insert)
  apply (subst FAddSA-dom-dom-States)
    apply simp
    apply fast
    apply simp
    apply fast
apply (subst FAddSA-dom-emptyset)
  apply simp
  apply fast
apply simp
apply fast
apply (subst FAddSA-dom-insert)
  apply (subst FAddSA-dom-dom-States)
    apply simp
    apply fast
    apply simp
    apply fast
apply (subst FAddSA-dom-emptyset)
  apply simp
  apply fast
apply simp
apply simp
by (simp add: AddSA-CompFun-ran-not-mem insert-Diff-if insert-commute)

```

**lemma** *AddSA-CompFun-PseudoHA-ran:*

```

   $\llbracket S \in \text{States RootSA};$ 
   $\text{States RootSA} \cap \text{States SA} = \{\} \rrbracket \implies$ 
   $(\text{ran} (\text{CompFun} ((\text{PseudoHA RootSA } D) [++] (S, SA)))) = (\text{insert } \{\} \{\{SA\}\})$ 
apply (subst AddSA-CompFun-ran)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** *AddSA-CompFun-PseudoHA-ran2:*

```

   $\llbracket \text{States SA1} \cap \text{States RootSA} = \{\};$ 
   $\text{States SA2} \cap (\text{States RootSA} \cup \text{States SA1}) = \{\};$ 
   $S \in \text{States RootSA} \rrbracket \implies$ 
   $(\text{ran} (\text{CompFun} ((\text{PseudoHA RootSA } D) [++] (S, SA1) [++] (S, SA2)))) =$ 
   $(\text{insert } \{\} \{\{SA2, SA1\}\})$ 
apply (subst AddSA-CompFun-ran)
prefer 3
apply (subst AddSA-CompFun-the)
apply simp
apply simp
apply (subst AddSA-CompFun-PseudoHA-ran)
apply fast
apply fast
apply (subst AddSA-CompFun-the)
apply simp

```

```

apply simp
apply simp
apply fast
apply (simp add: AddSA-HAStates)
apply (simp add: AddSA-HAStates)
done

```

```

lemma AddSA-HAInitStates [simp]:
   $\llbracket \text{States } SA \cap \text{HAStates } A = \{\};$ 
   $S \in \text{HAStates } A \rrbracket \implies$ 
   $\text{HAInitStates } (A \text{ [++]} (S, SA)) = \text{insert } (\text{InitState } SA) (\text{HAInitStates } A)$ 
apply (unfold HAINitStates-def)
apply (simp add: AddSA-SAs)
done

```

```

lemma AddSA-HAInitState [simp]:
   $\llbracket \text{States } SA \cap \text{HAStates } A = \{\};$ 
   $S \in \text{HAStates } A \rrbracket \implies$ 
   $\text{HAInitState } (A \text{ [++]} (S, SA)) = (\text{HAInitState } A)$ 
apply (unfold HAINitState-def)
apply (simp add: AddSA-HARoot)
done

```

```

lemma AddSA-Chi [simp]:
   $\llbracket \text{States } SA \cap \text{HAStates } A = \{\};$ 
   $S \in \text{HAStates } A \rrbracket \implies$ 
   $\text{Chi } (A \text{ [++]} (S, SA)) S = (\text{States } SA) \cup (\text{Chi } A S)$ 
apply (unfold Chi-def restrict-def)
apply (simp add: AddSA-SAs AddSA-HAStates AddSA-CompFun-the)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma AddSA-Chi2 [simp]:
   $\llbracket \text{States } SA \cap \text{HAStates } A = \{\};$ 
   $S \in \text{HAStates } A;$ 
   $T \in \text{States } SA \rrbracket \implies$ 
   $\text{Chi } (A \text{ [++]} (S, SA)) T = \{\}$ 
apply (unfold Chi-def restrict-def)
apply (simp add: AddSA-SAs AddSA-HAStates AddSA-CompFun-the2)
done

```

```

lemma AddSA-Chi3 [simp]:
   $\llbracket \text{States } SA \cap \text{HAStates } A = \{\};$ 
   $S \in \text{HAStates } A;$ 
   $T \notin \text{States } SA; T \neq S \rrbracket \implies$ 
   $\text{Chi } (A \text{ [++]} (S, SA)) T = \text{Chi } A T$ 
apply (unfold Chi-def restrict-def)
apply (simp add: AddSA-SAs AddSA-HAStates AddSA-CompFun-the3)
apply auto

```

done

**lemma** *AddSA-ChiRel* [*simp*]:

$\llbracket \text{States } SA \cap \text{HAStates } A = \{\} \rrbracket$ ;

$S \in \text{HAStates } A \rrbracket \implies$

$\text{ChiRel } (A \text{ [++]} (S, SA)) = \{ (T, T') . T = S \wedge T' \in \text{States } SA \} \cup (\text{ChiRel } A)$

**apply** (*unfold ChiRel-def*)

**apply** (*simp add: AddSA-HAStates*)

**apply** *safe*

**apply** (*rename-tac T U*)

**apply** (*case-tac T ∈ States SA*)

**apply** *simp*

**apply** *simp*

**apply** (*rename-tac T U*)

**apply** (*case-tac T ≠ S*)

**apply** (*case-tac T ∈ States SA*)

**apply** *simp*

**apply** *simp*

**apply** *simp*

**apply** (*rename-tac T U*)

**apply** (*case-tac T ∈ States SA*)

**apply** *simp*

**apply** *simp*

**apply** (*cut-tac A=A and T=T in Chi-HAStates*)

**apply** *fast*

**apply** (*case-tac T ∈ States SA*)

**apply** *simp*

**apply** *simp*

**apply** (*cut-tac A=A and T=T in Chi-HAStates*)

**apply** *fast*

**apply** *fast*

**apply** (*rename-tac T U*)

**apply** (*case-tac T ≠ S*)

**apply** (*case-tac T ∈ States SA*)

**apply** *simp*

**apply** *simp*

**apply** *simp*

**apply** (*rename-tac T U*)

**apply** (*case-tac T ∈ States SA*)

**apply** *auto*

**apply** (*metis AddSA-Chi AddSA-Chi3 Int-iff Un-iff empty-iff*)

done

**lemma** *help-InitConf*:

$\llbracket \text{States } SA \cap \text{HAStates } A = \{\} \rrbracket \implies \{p. \text{fst } p \neq \text{InitState } SA \wedge \text{snd } p \neq \text{InitState } SA \wedge$

$p \in \text{insert } (\text{InitState } SA) (\text{HAINitStates } A) \times \text{insert } (\text{InitState } SA) (\text{HAINitStates } A) \wedge$

$(p \in \{S\} \times \text{States } SA \vee p \in \text{ChiRel } A)\} =$

```

    (HInitStates A × HInitStates A ∩ ChiRel A)
  apply auto
  apply (cut-tac A=SA in InitState-States)
  apply (cut-tac A=A in HInitStates-HAStates, fast)
  apply (cut-tac A=SA in InitState-States)
  apply (cut-tac A=A in HInitStates-HAStates, fast)
  done

lemma AddSA-InitConf [simp]:
  [| States SA ∩ HAStates A = {}];
  [S ∈ InitConf A] ⇒
  InitConf (A [++] (S,SA)) = insert (InitState SA) (InitConf A)
  apply (frule InitConf-HAStates2)
  apply (unfold InitConf-def)
  apply (simp del: insert-Times-insert)
  apply auto
  apply (rename-tac T)
  apply (case-tac T=S)
  apply auto
  prefer 3
  apply (rule-tac R=(HInitStates A) × (HInitStates A) ∩ ChiRel A in trancl-subseteq)
  apply auto
  apply (rotate-tac 3)
  apply (frule trancl-collect)
  prefer 2
  apply fast
  apply auto
  apply (cut-tac A=SA in InitState-States)
  apply (frule ChiRel-HAStates)
  apply fast
  apply (frule ChiRel-HAStates)
  apply (cut-tac A=SA in InitState-States)
  apply fast
  apply (subst help-InitConf [THEN sym])
  apply fast
  apply auto
  apply (rule-tac b=S in rtrancl-into-rtrancl)
  apply auto
  prefer 2
  apply (erule rtranclE)
  apply auto
  prefer 2
  apply (erule rtranclE)
  apply auto
  apply (rule-tac R=(HInitStates A) × (HInitStates A) ∩ ChiRel A in trancl-subseteq)
  apply auto
  done

lemma AddSA-InitConf2 [simp]:

```

```

[[ States SA  $\cap$  HAStates A = {}];
  S  $\notin$  InitConf A;
  S  $\in$  HAStates A ]]  $\implies$ 
  InitConf (A [++] (S,SA)) = InitConf A
apply (unfold InitConf-def)
apply simp
apply auto
apply (rename-tac T)
prefer 2
apply (rule-tac R=(HAINitStates A)  $\times$  (HAINitStates A)  $\cap$  ChiRel A in trancl-subseteq)
apply auto
apply (case-tac T=InitState SA)
apply auto
prefer 2
apply (rotate-tac 3)
apply (frule trancl-collect)
prefer 2
apply fast
apply auto
apply (cut-tac A=SA in InitState-States)
apply (frule ChiRel-HAStates)
apply fast
apply (cut-tac A=SA in InitState-States)
apply (frule ChiRel-HAStates)
apply fast
apply (cut-tac A=SA in InitState-States)
apply (cut-tac A=A in HAINitStates-HAStates)
apply (subst help-InitConf [THEN sym])
apply fast
apply auto
apply (rule-tac b=InitState SA in rtrancl-induct)
apply auto
apply (frule ChiRel-HAStates2)
apply (cut-tac A=SA in InitState-States)
apply fast
prefer 2
apply (frule ChiRel-HAStates)
apply (cut-tac A=SA in InitState-States)
apply fast
apply (rule rtrancl-into-rtrancl)
apply auto
done

```

## 11.5 Theorems for Calculating Wellformedness of HA

**lemma** *PseudoHA-HAStates-IFF*:

(States SA) = X  $\implies$  (HAStates (PseudoHA SA D)) = X

**apply** simp  
**done**

**lemma** *AddSA-SAs-IFF*:  
 $\llbracket \text{States } SA \cap \text{HAStates } HA = \{\};$   
 $S \in \text{HAStates } HA;$   
 $(\text{SAs } HA) = X \rrbracket \implies (\text{SAs } (HA \text{ [++]} (S, SA))) = (\text{insert } SA \ X)$   
**apply** (*subst AddSA-SAs*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *AddSA-Events-IFF*:  
 $\llbracket \text{States } SA \cap \text{HAStates } HA = \{\};$   
 $S \in \text{HAStates } HA;$   
 $(\text{HAEvents } HA) = \text{HAE};$   
 $(\text{SAEvents } SA) = \text{SAE};$   
 $(\text{HAE} \cup \text{SAE}) = X \rrbracket \implies (\text{HAEvents } (HA \text{ [++]} (S, SA))) = X$   
**apply** (*subst AddSA-Events*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *AddSA-CompFun-IFF*:  
 $\llbracket \text{States } SA \cap \text{HAStates } HA = \{\};$   
 $S \in \text{HAStates } HA;$   
 $(\text{CompFun } HA) = \text{HAG};$   
 $(\text{HAG } [f+] (S, SA)) = X \rrbracket \implies (\text{CompFun } (HA \text{ [++]} (S, SA))) = X$   
**apply** (*subst AddSA-CompFun*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *AddSA-HAStates-IFF*:  
 $\llbracket \text{States } SA \cap \text{HAStates } HA = \{\};$   
 $S \in \text{HAStates } HA;$   
 $(\text{HAStates } HA) = \text{HAS};$   
 $(\text{States } SA) = \text{SAS};$   
 $(\text{HAS} \cup \text{SAS}) = X \rrbracket \implies (\text{HAStates } (HA \text{ [++]} (S, SA))) = X$   
**apply** (*subst AddSA-HAStates*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *AddSA-HAInitValue-IFF*:  
 $\llbracket \text{States } SA \cap \text{HAStates } HA = \{\};$   
 $S \in \text{HAStates } HA;$   
 $(\text{HAInitValue } HA) = X \rrbracket \implies (\text{HAInitValue } (HA \text{ [++]} (S, SA))) = X$   
**apply** (*subst AddSA-HAInitValue*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *AddSA-HARoot-IFF*:  
 $\llbracket \text{States } SA \cap \text{HAStates } HA = \{\};$   
 $S \in \text{HAStates } HA;$

$(HARoot HA) = X \implies (HARoot (HA [++] (S, SA))) = X$   
**apply** (subst AddSA-HARoot)  
**apply** auto  
**done**

**lemma** AddSA-InitConf-IFF:

$\llbracket \text{InitConf } A = Y;$   
 $\text{States } SA \cap \text{HAStates } A = \{\};$   
 $S \in \text{HAStates } A;$   
 $(\text{if } S \in Y \text{ then insert (InitState } SA) \ Y \ \text{else } Y) = X \rrbracket \implies$   
 $\text{InitConf } (A [++] (S, SA)) = X$   
**apply** (case-tac  $S \in Y$ )  
**apply** auto  
**done**

**lemma** AddSA-CompFun-ran-IFF:

$\llbracket (\text{States } SA \cap \text{HAStates } A) = \{\};$   
 $S \in \text{HAStates } A;$   
 $(\text{insert } \{\} (\text{insert } (\text{insert } SA (\text{the } ((\text{CompFun } A) \ S)))) (\text{ran } (\text{CompFun } A) -$   
 $\{\text{the } ((\text{CompFun } A) \ S)\})) = X \rrbracket \implies$   
 $\text{ran } (\text{CompFun } (A [++] (S, SA))) = X$   
**apply** (subst AddSA-CompFun-ran)  
**apply** auto  
**done**

**lemma** AddSA-CompFun-ran2-IFF:

$\llbracket (\text{States } SA1 \cap \text{HAStates } A) = \{\};$   
 $(\text{States } SA2 \cap (\text{HAStates } A \cup \text{States } SA1)) = \{\};$   
 $S \in \text{HAStates } A;$   
 $T \in \text{States } SA1;$   
 $\text{insert } \{\} (\text{insert } \{SA2\} (\text{ran } (\text{CompFun } (A [++] (S, SA1)))))) = X \rrbracket \implies$   
 $\text{ran } (\text{CompFun } ((A [++] (S, SA1)) [++] (T, SA2))) = X$   
**apply** (subst AddSA-CompFun-ran2)  
**apply** auto  
**done**

**lemma** AddSA-CompFun-ran3-IFF:

$\llbracket (\text{States } SA1 \cap \text{HAStates } A) = \{\};$   
 $(\text{States } SA2 \cap (\text{HAStates } A \cup \text{States } SA1)) = \{\};$   
 $(\text{States } SA3 \cap (\text{HAStates } A \cup \text{States } SA1 \cup \text{States } SA2)) = \{\};$   
 $S \in \text{HAStates } A;$   
 $T \in \text{States } SA1;$   
 $\text{insert } \{\} (\text{insert } \{SA3, SA2\} (\text{ran } (\text{CompFun } (A [++] (S, SA1)))))) = X \rrbracket \implies$   
 $\text{ran } (\text{CompFun } ((A [++] (S, SA1)) [++] (T, SA2) [++] (T, SA3))) = X$   
**apply** (subst AddSA-CompFun-ran3)  
**apply** auto  
**done**

**lemma** AddSA-CompFun-PseudoHA-ran-IFF:

```

[[ S ∈ States RootSA;
   States RootSA ∩ States SA = {};
   (insert {} {{SA}}) = X ]] ⇒
(ran (CompFun ((PseudoHA RootSA D) [++] (S,SA)))) = X
apply (subst AddSA-CompFun-PseudoHA-ran)
apply auto
done

```

**lemma** *AddSA-CompFun-PseudoHA-ran2-IFF*:

```

[[ States SA1 ∩ States RootSA = {};
   States SA2 ∩ (States RootSA ∪ States SA1) = {};
   S ∈ States RootSA;
   (insert {} {{SA2,SA1}}) = X ]] ⇒
(ran (CompFun ((PseudoHA RootSA D) [++] (S,SA1) [++] (S,SA2)))) = X
apply (subst AddSA-CompFun-PseudoHA-ran2)
apply auto
done

```

**ML** ‹

```

val AddSA-SAs-IFF = @{thm AddSA-SAs-IFF};
val AddSA-Events-IFF = @{thm AddSA-Events-IFF};
val AddSA-CompFun-IFF = @{thm AddSA-CompFun-IFF};
val AddSA-HAStates-IFF = @{thm AddSA-HAStates-IFF};
val PseudoHA-HAStates-IFF = @{thm PseudoHA-HAStates-IFF};
val AddSA-HAInitValue-IFF = @{thm AddSA-HAInitValue-IFF};
val AddSA-CompFun-ran-IFF = @{thm AddSA-CompFun-ran-IFF};
val AddSA-HARoot-IFF = @{thm AddSA-HARoot-IFF};
val insert-inter = @{thm insert-inter};
val insert-notmem = @{thm insert-notmem};
val PseudoHA-CompFun = @{thm PseudoHA-CompFun};
val PseudoHA-Events = @{thm PseudoHA-Events};
val PseudoHA-SAs = @{thm PseudoHA-SAs};
val PseudoHA-HARoot = @{thm PseudoHA-HARoot};
val PseudoHA-HAInitValue = @{thm PseudoHA-HAInitValue};
val PseudoHA-CompFun-ran = @{thm PseudoHA-CompFun-ran};
val Un-empty-right = @{thm Un-empty-right};
val insert-union = @{thm insert-union};

```

```

fun wellformed-tac ctxt L i =
  FIRST[resolve-tac ctxt [AddSA-SAs-IFF] i,
        resolve-tac ctxt [AddSA-Events-IFF] i,
        resolve-tac ctxt [AddSA-CompFun-IFF] i,
        resolve-tac ctxt [AddSA-HAStates-IFF] i,
        resolve-tac ctxt [PseudoHA-HAStates-IFF] i,
        resolve-tac ctxt [AddSA-HAInitValue-IFF] i,
        resolve-tac ctxt [AddSA-HARoot-IFF] i,

```

```

    resolve-tac ctxt [AddSA-CompFun-ran-IFF] i,
    resolve-tac ctxt [insert-inter] i,
    resolve-tac ctxt [insert-notmem] i,
    CHANGED (simp-tac (put-simpset HOL-basic-ss ctxt addsimps
[PseudoHA-HARoot, PseudoHA-CompFun, PseudoHA-CompFun-ran, PseudoHA-Events, PseudoHA-SAs
    PseudoHA-HAInitValue, Un-empty-right]@ L) i),
    fast-tac ctxt i,
    CHANGED (simp-tac ctxt i);
  ›

```

```

method-setup wellformed = ‹Attrib.thms ‹› (fn thms => fn ctxt => (METHOD
(fn facts =>
    (HEADGOAL (wellformed-tac ctxt (facts @
thms))))))›

```

**end**

## 12 Example Specification for a Car Audio System

```

theory CarAudioSystem
imports HAKripke HAOps
begin

```

### 12.1 Definitions

#### 12.1.1 Data space for two Integer-Variables

```

datatype d = V0 int
          | V1 int

```

```

primrec
  Sel0 :: d => int where
  Sel0 (V0 i) = i

```

```

primrec
  Sel1 :: d => int where
  Sel1 (V1 i) = i

```

```

definition
  Select0 :: [d data] => int where
  Select0 d = Sel0 (DataPart d 0)

```

```

definition
  Select1 :: [d data] => int where
  Select1 d = Sel1 (DataPart d 1)

```

**definition**

*DSpace* :: *d* *dataspace* **where**  
*DSpace* = *Abs-dataspace* ([*range V0*, *range V1*])

**definition**

*LiftInitData* :: (*d list*) => *d data* **where**  
*LiftInitData L* = *Abs-data* (*L,DSpace*)

**definition**

*LiftPUpdate* :: (*d data* => ((*d option*) *list*)) => *d pupdate* **where**  
*LiftPUpdate L* = *Abs-pupdate*  
 ( $\lambda d.$  if ((*DataSpace d*) = *DSpace*) then  
     *Abs-pdata* (*L d, DSpace*)  
 else (*Data2PData d*))

**12.1.2 Sequential Automaton *Root-CTRL*****definition**

*Root-CTRL-States* :: *string set* **where**  
*Root-CTRL-States* = {"*CarAudioSystem*"}

**definition**

*Root-CTRL-Init* :: *string* **where**  
*Root-CTRL-Init* = "*CarAudioSystem*"

**definition**

*Root-CTRL-Labels* :: (*string, string, d*)*label set* **where**  
*Root-CTRL-Labels* = {}

**definition**

*Root-CTRL-Delta* :: (*string, string, d*)*trans set* **where**  
*Root-CTRL-Delta* = {}

**definition**

*Root-CTRL* :: (*string, string, d*)*seqauto* **where**  
*Root-CTRL* = *Abs-seqauto* (*Root-CTRL-States*, *Root-CTRL-Init*,  
*Root-CTRL-Labels*, *Root-CTRL-Delta*)

**12.1.3 Sequential Automaton *CDPlayer-CTRL*****definition**

*CDPlayer-CTRL-States* :: *string set* **where**  
*CDPlayer-CTRL-States* = {"*ReadTracks*", "*CDFull*", "*CDEmpty*"}

**definition**

*CDPlayer-CTRL-Init* :: *string* **where**  
*CDPlayer-CTRL-Init* = "*CDEmpty*"

**definition**

*CDPlayer-CTRL-Update1* :: *d* *pupdate* **where**  
*CDPlayer-CTRL-Update1* = *LiftPUpdate* (% *d*. [*None*, *Some* (*V1* ((*Select0* *d*) + 1))])

**definition**

*CDPlayer-CTRL-Action1* :: (*string*,*d*)*action* **where**  
*CDPlayer-CTRL-Action1* = ({}, *CDPlayer-CTRL-Update1*)

**definition**

*CDPlayer-CTRL-Update2* :: *d* *pupdate* **where**  
*CDPlayer-CTRL-Update2* = *LiftPUpdate* (% *d*. [*Some* (*V0* ((*Select0* *d*) + 1)), *None*])

**definition**

*CDPlayer-CTRL-Action2* :: (*string*,*d*)*action* **where**  
*CDPlayer-CTRL-Action2* = ({}, *CDPlayer-CTRL-Update2*)

**definition**

*CDPlayer-CTRL-Update3* :: *d* *pupdate* **where**  
*CDPlayer-CTRL-Update3* = *LiftPUpdate* (% *d*. [*Some* (*V0* 0), *None*])

**definition**

*CDPlayer-CTRL-Action3* :: (*string*,*d*)*action* **where**  
*CDPlayer-CTRL-Action3* = ({}, *CDPlayer-CTRL-Update3*)

**definition**

*CDPlayer-CTRL-Labels* :: (*string*,*string*,*d*)*label set* **where**  
*CDPlayer-CTRL-Labels* = {(*En* "*LastTrack*", *defaultguard*, *CDPlayer-CTRL-Action1*),  
(*En* "*NewTrack*", *defaultguard*, *CDPlayer-CTRL-Action2*),  
(*And* (*En* "*CDEject*" (*In* "*On*"), *defaultguard*, *CD-Player-CTRL-Action3*),  
(*En* "*CDIn*", *defaultguard*, *defaultaction*)}

**definition**

*CDPlayer-CTRL-Delta* :: (*string*,*string*,*d*)*trans set* **where**  
*CDPlayer-CTRL-Delta* = {"*ReadTracks*",(*En* "*LastTrack*", *defaultguard*, *CD-Player-CTRL-Action1*),  
"*CDFull*",  
("*CDFull*",(*And* (*En* "*CDEject*" (*In* "*On*"), *defaultguard*,  
*CDPlayer-CTRL-Action3*),  
"*CDEmpty*",  
("*ReadTracks*",(*En* "*NewTrack*", *defaultguard*, *CD-Player-CTRL-Action2*),  
"*ReadTracks*",  
("*CDEmpty*",(*En* "*CDIn*", *defaultguard*, *defaultaction*),  
"*ReadTracks*"}

**definition**

*CDPlayer-CTRL* :: (*string, string, d*)seqauto **where**  
*CDPlayer-CTRL* = *Abs-seqauto* (*CDPlayer-CTRL-States*, *CDPlayer-CTRL-Init*,  
*CDPlayer-CTRL-Labels*, *CDPlayer-CTRL-Delta*)

#### 12.1.4 Sequential Automaton *AudioPlayer-CTRL*

##### definition

*AudioPlayer-CTRL-States* :: *string set* **where**  
*AudioPlayer-CTRL-States* = {"Off", "On"}

##### definition

*AudioPlayer-CTRL-Init* :: *string* **where**  
*AudioPlayer-CTRL-Init* = "Off"

##### definition

*AudioPlayer-CTRL-Labels* :: (*string, string, d*)label set **where**  
*AudioPlayer-CTRL-Labels* = {(En "O", defaultguard, defaultaction)}

##### definition

*AudioPlayer-CTRL-Delta* :: (*string, string, d*)trans set **where**  
*AudioPlayer-CTRL-Delta* = {"Off", (En "O", defaultguard, defaultaction), "On"},  
("On", (En "O", defaultguard, defaultaction), "Off")}

##### definition

*AudioPlayer-CTRL* :: (*string, string, d*)seqauto **where**  
*AudioPlayer-CTRL* = *Abs-seqauto* (*AudioPlayer-CTRL-States*, *AudioPlayer-CTRL-Init*,  
*AudioPlayer-CTRL-Labels*, *AudioPlayer-CTRL-Delta*)

#### 12.1.5 Sequential Automaton *On-CTRL*

##### definition

*On-CTRL-States* :: *string set* **where**  
*On-CTRL-States* = {"TunerMode", "CDMode"}

##### definition

*On-CTRL-Init* :: *string* **where**  
*On-CTRL-Init* = "TunerMode"

##### definition

*On-CTRL-Labels* :: (*string, string, d*)label set **where**  
*On-CTRL-Labels* = {(And (En "Src") (In "CDFull"), defaultguard, defaultaction),  
(En "Src", defaultguard, defaultaction),  
(En "CDEject", defaultguard, defaultaction),  
(En "EndOfTitle", (λ d. (DataPart d 0) = (DataPart d 1)),  
defaultaction)}

##### definition

*On-CTRL-Delta* :: (*string, string, d*)trans set **where**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{On-CTRL-Delta} = \{ & (\text{"TunerMode"}, (\text{And } (\text{En } \text{"Src"}) (\text{In } \text{"CDFull"}), \text{defaultguard}, \text{defaultaction}), \text{"CDMode"}), \\ & (\text{"CDMode"}, (\text{En } \text{"Src"}, \text{defaultguard}, \text{defaultaction}), \text{"TunerMode"}), \\ & (\text{"CDMode"}, (\text{En } \text{"CDEject"}, \text{defaultguard}, \text{defaultaction}), \\ \text{"TunerMode"}), \\ & (\text{"CDMode"}, (\text{En } \text{"EndOfTitle"}, (\lambda d. (\text{DataPart } d 0) = (\text{DataPart } \\ d 1))), \text{defaultaction}), \\ & \text{"TunerMode"}\} \end{aligned}$$

**definition**

$\text{On-CTRL} :: (\text{string}, \text{string}, d) \text{seqauto}$  **where**  
 $\text{On-CTRL} = \text{Abs-seqauto } (\text{On-CTRL-States}, \text{On-CTRL-Init}, \\ \text{On-CTRL-Labels}, \text{On-CTRL-Delta})$

### 12.1.6 Sequential Automaton *TunerMode-CTRL*

**definition**

$\text{TunerMode-CTRL-States} :: \text{string set}$  **where**  
 $\text{TunerMode-CTRL-States} = \{\text{"1"}, \text{"2"}, \text{"3"}, \text{"4"}\}$

**definition**

$\text{TunerMode-CTRL-Init} :: \text{string}$  **where**  
 $\text{TunerMode-CTRL-Init} = \text{"1"}$

**definition**

$\text{TunerMode-CTRL-Labels} :: (\text{string}, \text{string}, d) \text{label set}$  **where**  
 $\text{TunerMode-CTRL-Labels} = \{(\text{En } \text{"Next"}, \text{defaultguard}, \text{defaultaction}), \\ (\text{En } \text{"Back"}, \text{defaultguard}, \text{defaultaction})\}$

**definition**

$\text{TunerMode-CTRL-Delta} :: (\text{string}, \text{string}, d) \text{trans set}$  **where**  
 $\text{TunerMode-CTRL-Delta} = \{(\text{"1"}, (\text{En } \text{"Next"}, \text{defaultguard}, \text{defaultaction}), \text{"2"}), \\ (\text{"2"}, (\text{En } \text{"Next"}, \text{defaultguard}, \text{defaultaction}), \text{"3"}), \\ (\text{"3"}, (\text{En } \text{"Next"}, \text{defaultguard}, \text{defaultaction}), \text{"4"}), \\ (\text{"4"}, (\text{En } \text{"Next"}, \text{defaultguard}, \text{defaultaction}), \text{"1"}), \\ (\text{"1"}, (\text{En } \text{"Back"}, \text{defaultguard}, \text{defaultaction}), \text{"4"}), \\ (\text{"4"}, (\text{En } \text{"Back"}, \text{defaultguard}, \text{defaultaction}), \text{"3"}), \\ (\text{"3"}, (\text{En } \text{"Back"}, \text{defaultguard}, \text{defaultaction}), \text{"2"}), \\ (\text{"2"}, (\text{En } \text{"Back"}, \text{defaultguard}, \text{defaultaction}), \text{"1"})\}$

**definition**

$\text{TunerMode-CTRL} :: (\text{string}, \text{string}, d) \text{seqauto}$  **where**  
 $\text{TunerMode-CTRL} = \text{Abs-seqauto } (\text{TunerMode-CTRL-States}, \text{TunerMode-CTRL-Init}, \\ \text{TunerMode-CTRL-Labels}, \text{TunerMode-CTRL-Delta})$

### 12.1.7 Sequential Automaton *CDMode-CTRL*

**definition**

$\text{CDMode-CTRL-States} :: \text{string set}$  **where**  
 $\text{CDMode-CTRL-States} = \{\text{"Playing"}, \text{"SelectingNextTrack"}\}$

*"SelectingPreviousTrack"*}

**definition**

*CDMode-CTRL-Init* :: *string* **where**  
*CDMode-CTRL-Init* = *"Playing"*

**definition**

*CDMode-CTRL-Update1* :: *d* *pupdate* **where**  
*CDMode-CTRL-Update1* = *LiftPUpdate* (% *d*. [ *Some* (*V0* ((*Select0* *d*) + 1)),  
*None* ])

**definition**

*CDMode-CTRL-Action1* :: (*string*,*d*)*action* **where**  
*CDMode-CTRL-Action1* = ({},*CDMode-CTRL-Update1*)

**definition**

*CDMode-CTRL-Update2* :: *d* *pupdate* **where**  
*CDMode-CTRL-Update2* = *LiftPUpdate* (% *d*. [ *Some* (*V0* ((*Select0* *d*) - 1)),  
*None* ])

**definition**

*CDMode-CTRL-Action2* :: (*string*,*d*)*action* **where**  
*CDMode-CTRL-Action2* = ({},*CDMode-CTRL-Update2*)

**definition**

*CDMode-CTRL-Labels* :: (*string*,*string*,*d*)*label set* **where**  
*CDMode-CTRL-Labels* = {(*En* *"Next"*, *defaultguard*, *defaultaction*),  
(*En* *"Back"*, *defaultguard*, *defaultaction*),  
(*En* *"Ready"*, *defaultguard*, *CDMode-CTRL-Action1*),  
(*En* *"Ready"*, *defaultguard*, *CDMode-CTRL-Action2*),  
(*En* *"EndOfTitle"*, ( $\lambda$  (*d*:: *d data*). (*Select0* *d*) < (*Select1* *d*)),  
*defaultaction*)}

**definition**

*CDMode-CTRL-Delta* :: (*string*,*string*,*d*)*trans set* **where**  
*CDMode-CTRL-Delta* = {(*"Playing"*, (*En* *"Next"*, *defaultguard*, *defaultaction*),  
*"SelectingNextTrack"*),  
(*"SelectingNextTrack"*, (*En* *"Ready"*, *defaultguard*, *CD-*  
*Mode-CTRL-Action1*), *"Playing"*),  
(*"Playing"*, (*En* *"Back"*, *defaultguard*, *defaultaction*)  
*"SelectingPreviousTrack"*),  
(*"SelectingPreviousTrack"*, (*En* *"Ready"*, *defaultguard*,  
*CDMode-CTRL-Action2*),  
*"Playing"*),  
(*"Playing"*, (*En* *"EndOfTitle"*, ( $\lambda$  (*d*:: *d data*). (*Select0* *d*) <  
(*Select1* *d*)), *defaultaction*),  
*"SelectingNextTrack"*)}

**definition**

*CDMode-CTRL* :: (string,string,d)seqauto **where**  
*CDMode-CTRL* = Abs-seqauto (*CDMode-CTRL-States*, *CDMode-CTRL-Init*,  
*CDMode-CTRL-Labels*, *CDMode-CTRL-Delta*)

### 12.1.8 Hierarchical Automaton *CarAudioSystem*

**definition**

*CarAudioSystem* :: (string,string,d)hierauto **where**  
*CarAudioSystem* = ((PseudoHA *Root-CTRL* (LiftInitData [V0 0, V1 0]))  
 [++] ("*CarAudioSystem*",*CDPlayer-CTRL*)  
 [++] ("*CarAudioSystem*",*AudioPlayer-CTRL*)  
 [++] ("*On*", *TunerMode-CTRL*)  
 [++] ("*On*", *CDMode-CTRL*))

## 12.2 Lemmas

### 12.2.1 Sequential Automaton *CDMode-CTRL*

**lemma** *check-Root-CTRL*:

(*Root-CTRL-States*,*Root-CTRL-Init*,*Root-CTRL-Labels*,*Root-CTRL-Delta*) : seqauto

**apply** (unfold seqauto-def SeqAuto-def *Root-CTRL-States-def* *Root-CTRL-Init-def*  
*Root-CTRL-Labels-def* *Root-CTRL-Delta-def*)

**apply** *simp*

**done**

**lemma** *States-Root-CTRL*:

*States* *Root-CTRL* = *Root-CTRL-States*

**apply** (*simp* *add*: *Root-CTRL-def*)

**apply** (unfold *States-def*)

**apply** (*simp* *add*: Abs-seqauto-inverse *check-Root-CTRL*)

**done**

**lemma** *Init-State-Root-CTRL*:

*InitState* *Root-CTRL* = *Root-CTRL-Init*

**apply** (*simp* *add*: *Root-CTRL-def*)

**apply** (unfold *InitState-def*)

**apply** (*simp* *add*: Abs-seqauto-inverse *check-Root-CTRL*)

**done**

**lemma** *Labels-Root-CTRL*:

*Labels* *Root-CTRL* = *Root-CTRL-Labels*

**apply** (*simp* *add*: *Root-CTRL-def*)

**apply** (unfold *Labels-def*)

**apply** (*simp* *add*: Abs-seqauto-inverse *check-Root-CTRL*)

**done**

**lemma** *Delta-Root-CTRL*:

*Delta* *Root-CTRL* = *Root-CTRL-Delta*

**apply** (*simp* *add*: *Root-CTRL-def*)

```

apply (unfold Delta-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-Root-CTRL)
done

```

```

schematic-goal Events-Root-CTRL:
  SAEvents Root-CTRL = ?X
apply (unfold SAEvents-def expr-def)
apply (rule trans)
apply (simp add: expr-def Delta-Root-CTRL Root-CTRL-Delta-def)
apply (rule refl)
done

```

### 12.2.2 Sequential Automaton *CDPlayer-CTRL*

```

lemma check-CDPlayer-CTRL:
  (CDPlayer-CTRL-States, CDPlayer-CTRL-Init, CDPlayer-CTRL-Labels, CDPlayer-CTRL-Delta)
  : seqauto
apply (unfold seqauto-def SeqAuto-def CDPlayer-CTRL-States-def CDPlayer-CTRL-Init-def
CDPlayer-CTRL-Labels-def CDPlayer-CTRL-Delta-def)
apply simp
done

```

```

lemma States-CDPlayer-CTRL:
  States CDPlayer-CTRL = CDPlayer-CTRL-States
apply (simp add: CDPlayer-CTRL-def)
apply (unfold States-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-CDPlayer-CTRL)
done

```

```

lemma Init-State-CDPlayer-CTRL:
  InitState CDPlayer-CTRL = CDPlayer-CTRL-Init
apply (simp add: CDPlayer-CTRL-def)
apply (unfold InitState-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-CDPlayer-CTRL)
done

```

```

lemma Labels-CDPlayer-CTRL:
  Labels CDPlayer-CTRL = CDPlayer-CTRL-Labels
apply (simp add: CDPlayer-CTRL-def)
apply (unfold Labels-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-CDPlayer-CTRL)
done

```

```

lemma Delta-CDPlayer-CTRL:
  Delta CDPlayer-CTRL = CDPlayer-CTRL-Delta
apply (simp add: CDPlayer-CTRL-def)
apply (unfold Delta-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-CDPlayer-CTRL)
done

```

```

schematic-goal Events-CDPlayer-CTRL:
  SAEvents CDPlayer-CTRL = ?X
apply (unfold SAEvents-def)
apply (rule trans)
apply (simp add: expr-def Delta-CDPlayer-CTRL CDPlayer-CTRL-Delta-def CD-
Player-CTRL-Action1-def CDPlayer-CTRL-Action2-def CDPlayer-CTRL-Action3-def
Label-def)
apply (rule refl)
done

```

### 12.2.3 Sequential Automaton *AudioPlayer-CTRL*

```

lemma check-AudioPlayer-CTRL:
  (AudioPlayer-CTRL-States,AudioPlayer-CTRL-Init,AudioPlayer-CTRL-Labels,AudioPlayer-CTRL-Delta)
  : seqauto
apply (unfold seqauto-def SeqAuto-def AudioPlayer-CTRL-States-def AudioPlayer-CTRL-Init-def
AudioPlayer-CTRL-Labels-def AudioPlayer-CTRL-Delta-def)
apply simp
done

```

```

lemma States-AudioPlayer-CTRL:
  States AudioPlayer-CTRL = AudioPlayer-CTRL-States
apply (simp add: AudioPlayer-CTRL-def)
apply (unfold States-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-AudioPlayer-CTRL)
done

```

```

lemma Init-State-AudioPlayer-CTRL:
  InitState AudioPlayer-CTRL = AudioPlayer-CTRL-Init
apply (simp add: AudioPlayer-CTRL-def)
apply (unfold InitState-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-AudioPlayer-CTRL)
done

```

```

lemma Labels-AudioPlayer-CTRL:
  Labels AudioPlayer-CTRL = AudioPlayer-CTRL-Labels
apply (simp add: AudioPlayer-CTRL-def)
apply (unfold Labels-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-AudioPlayer-CTRL)
done

```

```

lemma Delta-AudioPlayer-CTRL:
  Delta AudioPlayer-CTRL = AudioPlayer-CTRL-Delta
apply (simp add: AudioPlayer-CTRL-def)
apply (unfold Delta-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-AudioPlayer-CTRL)
done

```

```

schematic-goal Events-AudioPlayer-CTRL:
  SAEvents AudioPlayer-CTRL = ?X
apply (unfold SAEvents-def)
apply (rule trans)
apply (simp add: expr-def Delta-AudioPlayer-CTRL AudioPlayer-CTRL-Delta-def
Label-def)
apply (rule refl)
done

```

#### 12.2.4 Sequential Automaton *On-CTRL*

```

lemma check-On-CTRL:
  (On-CTRL-States, On-CTRL-Init, On-CTRL-Labels, On-CTRL-Delta) : seqauto
apply (unfold seqauto-def SeqAuto-def On-CTRL-States-def On-CTRL-Init-def On-CTRL-Labels-def
On-CTRL-Delta-def)
apply simp
done

```

```

lemma States-On-CTRL:
  States On-CTRL = On-CTRL-States
apply (simp add: On-CTRL-def)
apply (unfold States-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-On-CTRL)
done

```

```

lemma Init-State-On-CTRL:
  InitState On-CTRL = On-CTRL-Init
apply (simp add: On-CTRL-def)
apply (unfold InitState-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-On-CTRL)
done

```

```

lemma Labels-On-CTRL:
  Labels On-CTRL = On-CTRL-Labels
apply (simp add: On-CTRL-def)
apply (unfold Labels-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-On-CTRL)
done

```

```

lemma Delta-On-CTRL:
  Delta On-CTRL = On-CTRL-Delta
apply (simp add: On-CTRL-def)
apply (unfold Delta-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-On-CTRL)
done

```

```

schematic-goal Events-On-CTRL:
  SAEvents On-CTRL = ?X
apply (unfold SAEvents-def)

```

```

apply (rule trans)
apply (simp add: expr-def Delta-On-CTRL On-CTRL-Delta-def Label-def)
apply (rule refl)
done

```

### 12.2.5 Sequential Automaton *TunerMode-CTRL*

```

lemma check-TunerMode-CTRL:
  (TunerMode-CTRL-States, TunerMode-CTRL-Init, TunerMode-CTRL-Labels, TunerMode-CTRL-Delta)
  : seqauto
apply (unfold seqauto-def SeqAuto-def TunerMode-CTRL-States-def TunerMode-CTRL-Init-def
  TunerMode-CTRL-Labels-def TunerMode-CTRL-Delta-def)
apply simp
done

```

```

lemma States-TunerMode-CTRL:
  States TunerMode-CTRL = TunerMode-CTRL-States
apply (simp add: TunerMode-CTRL-def)
apply (unfold States-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-TunerMode-CTRL)
done

```

```

lemma Init-State-TunerMode-CTRL:
  InitState TunerMode-CTRL = TunerMode-CTRL-Init
apply (simp add: TunerMode-CTRL-def)
apply (unfold InitState-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-TunerMode-CTRL)
done

```

```

lemma Labels-TunerMode-CTRL:
  Labels TunerMode-CTRL = TunerMode-CTRL-Labels
apply (simp add: TunerMode-CTRL-def)
apply (unfold Labels-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-TunerMode-CTRL)
done

```

```

lemma Delta-TunerMode-CTRL:
  Delta TunerMode-CTRL = TunerMode-CTRL-Delta
apply (simp add: TunerMode-CTRL-def)
apply (unfold Delta-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-TunerMode-CTRL)
done

```

```

schematic-goal Events-TunerMode-CTRL:
  SAEvents TunerMode-CTRL = ?X
apply (unfold SAEvents-def)
apply (rule trans)
apply (simp add: expr-def Delta-TunerMode-CTRL TunerMode-CTRL-Delta-def
  Label-def)

```

**apply** (*rule refl*)  
**done**

### 12.2.6 Sequential Automaton *CDMode-CTRL*

**lemma** *check-CDMode-CTRL*:

(*CDMode-CTRL-States, CDMode-CTRL-Init, CDMode-CTRL-Labels, CDMode-CTRL-Delta*)  
: *seqauto*

**apply** (*unfold seqauto-def SeqAuto-def CDMode-CTRL-States-def CDMode-CTRL-Init-def*  
*CDMode-CTRL-Labels-def CDMode-CTRL-Delta-def*)

**apply** *simp*

**done**

**lemma** *States-CDMode-CTRL*:

*States CDMode-CTRL = CDMode-CTRL-States*

**apply** (*simp add: CDMode-CTRL-def*)

**apply** (*unfold States-def*)

**apply** (*simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-CDMode-CTRL*)

**done**

**lemma** *Init-State-CDMode-CTRL*:

*InitState CDMode-CTRL = CDMode-CTRL-Init*

**apply** (*simp add: CDMode-CTRL-def*)

**apply** (*unfold InitState-def*)

**apply** (*simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-CDMode-CTRL*)

**done**

**lemma** *Labels-CDMode-CTRL*:

*Labels CDMode-CTRL = CDMode-CTRL-Labels*

**apply** (*simp add: CDMode-CTRL-def*)

**apply** (*unfold Labels-def*)

**apply** (*simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-CDMode-CTRL*)

**done**

**lemma** *Delta-CDMode-CTRL*:

*Delta CDMode-CTRL = CDMode-CTRL-Delta*

**apply** (*simp add: CDMode-CTRL-def*)

**apply** (*unfold Delta-def*)

**apply** (*simp add: Abs-seqauto-inverse check-CDMode-CTRL*)

**done**

**schematic-goal** *Events-CDMode-CTRL*:

*SAEvents CDMode-CTRL = ?X*

**apply** (*unfold SAEvents-def*)

**apply** (*rule trans*)

**apply** (*simp add: expr-def Label-def Delta-CDMode-CTRL CDMode-CTRL-Delta-def*  
*CDMode-CTRL-Action1-def CDMode-CTRL-Action2-def*)

**apply** (*rule refl*)

**done**

### 12.2.7 Hierarchical Automaton *CarAudioSystem*

**lemmas** *CarAudioSystemStates* = *States-Root-CTRL States-CDPlayer-CTRL States-AudioPlayer-CTRL States-On-CTRL*

*States-TunerMode-CTRL States-CDMode-CTRL*  
*Root-CTRL-States-def CDPlayer-CTRL-States-def*  
*AudioPlayer-CTRL-States-def*  
*On-CTRL-States-def TunerMode-CTRL-States-def*  
*CDMode-CTRL-States-def*

**lemmas** *CarAudioSystemInitState* = *Init-State-Root-CTRL Init-State-CDPlayer-CTRL Init-State-AudioPlayer-CTRL*

*Init-State-On-CTRL Init-State-TunerMode-CTRL*  
*Init-State-CDMode-CTRL*  
*Root-CTRL-Init-def CDPlayer-CTRL-Init-def*  
*AudioPlayer-CTRL-Init-def*  
*On-CTRL-Init-def TunerMode-CTRL-Init-def*  
*CDMode-CTRL-Init-def*

**lemmas** *CarAudioSystemEvents* = *Events-Root-CTRL Events-CDPlayer-CTRL Events-AudioPlayer-CTRL Events-On-CTRL*

*Events-TunerMode-CTRL Events-CDMode-CTRL*

**lemmas** *CarAudioSystemthms* = *CarAudioSystemStates CarAudioSystemEvents CarAudioSystemInitState*

**schematic-goal** *CarAudioSystem-StatesRoot:*

*HStates (PseudoHA Root-CTRL (LiftInitData [V0 0, V1 0])) = ?X*

**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms*)+

**done**

**lemmas** *CarAudioSystemthms-1* = *CarAudioSystemthms CarAudioSystem-StatesRoot*

**schematic-goal** *CarAudioSystem-StatesCDPlayer:*

*HStates (PseudoHA Root-CTRL (LiftInitData [V0 0, V1 0])) [++]*

*("CarAudioSystem", CDPlayer-CTRL) = ?X*

**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-1*)+

**done**

**lemmas** *CarAudioSystemthms-2* = *CarAudioSystemthms-1 CarAudioSystem-StatesCDPlayer*

**schematic-goal** *CarAudioSystem-StatesAudioPlayer:*

*HStates (PseudoHA Root-CTRL (LiftInitData [V0 0, V1 0]))*

*[++] ("CarAudioSystem", CDPlayer-CTRL)*

*[++] ("CarAudioSystem", AudioPlayer-CTRL) = ?X*

**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-2*)  
**done**

**lemmas** *CarAudioSystemthms-3 = CarAudioSystemthms-2 CarAudioSystem-StatesAudioPlayer*

**schematic-goal** *CarAudioSystem-StatesTunerMode:*

*HASates (PseudoHA Root-CTRL (LiftInitData [V0 0, V1 0])*  
     $[++]$  (*"CarAudioSystem"*, *CDPlayer-CTRL*)  
     $[++]$  (*"CarAudioSystem"*, *AudioPlayer-CTRL*)  
     $[++]$  (*"On"*, *TunerMode-CTRL*)) = ?X

**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-3*)  
**done**

**lemmas** *CarAudioSystemthms-4 = CarAudioSystemthms-3 CarAudioSystem-StatesTunerMode*

**schematic-goal** *CarAudioSystem-StatesCDMode:*

*HASates (PseudoHA Root-CTRL (LiftInitData [V0 0, V1 0])*  
     $[++]$  (*"CarAudioSystem"*, *CDPlayer-CTRL*)  
     $[++]$  (*"CarAudioSystem"*, *AudioPlayer-CTRL*)  
     $[++]$  (*"On"*, *TunerMode-CTRL*)  
     $[++]$  (*"On"*, *CDMode-CTRL*)) = ?X

**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-4*)  
**done**

**lemmas** *CarAudioSystemthms-5 = CarAudioSystemthms-4 CarAudioSystem-StatesCDMode*

**schematic-goal** *SAsCarAudioSystem:*

*SAs CarAudioSystem = ?X*

**apply** (*unfold CarAudioSystem-def*)

**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5*)  
**done**

**schematic-goal** *EventsCarAudioSystem:*

*HAEvents CarAudioSystem = ?X*

**apply** (*unfold CarAudioSystem-def*)

**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5*)  
**done**

**schematic-goal** *CompFunCarAudioSystem:*

*CompFun CarAudioSystem = ?X*

**apply** (*unfold CarAudioSystem-def*)

**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5*)  
**done**

**schematic-goal** *StatesCarAudioSystem:*

*HASates CarAudioSystem = ?X*

**apply** (*unfold CarAudioSystem-def*)

**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5*)  
**done**

```

schematic-goal ValueCarAudioSystem:
  HASInitValue CarAudioSystem = ?X
apply (unfold CarAudioSystem-def)
apply (wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5)+
done

```

```

schematic-goal HASInitStatesCarAudioSystem:
  HASInitStates CarAudioSystem = ?X
by (simp add: HASInitStates-def SAsCarAudioSystem CarAudioSystemInitState)

```

```

schematic-goal HARootCarAudioSystem:
  HARoot CarAudioSystem = ?X
apply (unfold CarAudioSystem-def)
apply (wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5)+
done

```

```

schematic-goal HASInitStateCarAudioSystem:
  HASInitState CarAudioSystem = ?X
by (simp add: HARootCarAudioSystem HASInitState-def CarAudioSystemInitState)

```

```

lemma check-DataSpace [simp]:
  [range V0, range V1] ∈ dataspace
apply (unfold dataspace-def DataSpace.DataSpace-def)
apply auto
apply (rename-tac D)
apply (case-tac D)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma PartNum-DataSpace [simp]:
  PartNum (DSpace) = 2
apply (unfold PartNum-def DSpace-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-dataspace-inverse)
done

```

```

lemma PartDom-DataSpace-V0 [simp]:
  (PartDom DSpace 0) = range V0
apply (unfold PartDom-def DSpace-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-dataspace-inverse)
done

```

```

lemma PartDom-DataSpace-V1 [simp]:
  (PartDom DSpace (Suc 0)) = range V1

```

**apply** (*unfold PartDom-def DSpace-def*)  
**apply** (*simp add: Abs-dataspace-inverse*)  
**done**

**lemma** *check-InitialData [simp]:*  
 $([V0\ 0, V1\ 0], DSpace) \in \text{data}$   
**apply** (*unfold data-def Data.Data-def*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**apply** (*rename-tac d*)  
**apply** (*case-tac d=0  $\vee$  d = 1*)  
**apply** *auto*  
**done**

**lemma** *Select0-InitData [simp]:*  
 $Select0 (LiftInitData [V0\ 0, V1\ 0]) = 0$   
**apply** (*unfold LiftInitData-def Select0-def DataPart-def DataValue-def*)  
**apply** (*simp add: Abs-data-inverse*)  
**done**

**lemma** *Select1-InitData [simp]:*  
 $Select1 (LiftInitData [V0\ 0, V1\ 0]) = 0$   
**apply** (*unfold LiftInitData-def Select1-def DataPart-def DataValue-def*)  
**apply** (*simp add: Abs-data-inverse*)  
**done**

**lemma** *HAINitValue1-CarAudioSystem:*  
 $CarAudioSystem \models H = Atom (VAL (\lambda d. (Select0\ d) = 0))$   
**apply** (*simp add: ValueCarAudioSystem*)  
**done**

**lemma** *HAINitValue2-CarAudioSystem:*  
 $CarAudioSystem \models H = Atom (VAL (\lambda d. (Select1\ d) = 0))$   
**apply** (*simp add: ValueCarAudioSystem*)  
**done**

**lemma** *HAINitValue-DSpace-CarAudioSystem [simp]:*  
 $Data.DataSpace (LiftInitData [V0\ 0, V1\ 0]) = DSpace$   
**apply** (*unfold LiftInitData-def Data.DataSpace-def*)  
**apply** (*simp add: Abs-data-inverse*)  
**done**

**lemma** *check-InitStatus [simp]:*  
 $(CarAudioSystem, InitConf\ CarAudioSystem, \{\}, LiftInitData [V0\ 0, V1\ 0]) \in \text{status}$   
**apply** (*unfold status-def Status-def*)  
**apply** (*simp add: ValueCarAudioSystem*)  
**done**

**lemma** *InitData-InitStatus [simp]:*

```

  Value (InitStatus CarAudioSystem) = LiftInitData [V0 0, V1 0]
apply (simp add: ValueCarAudioSystem)
done

```

```

lemma Events-InitStatus [simp]:
  Events (InitStatus CarAudioSystem) = {}
apply (unfold InitStatus-def Events-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-status-inverse)
done

```

```

lemma Conf-InitStatus [simp]:
  Conf (InitStatus CarAudioSystem) = InitConf CarAudioSystem
apply (unfold InitStatus-def Conf-def)
apply (simp add: Abs-status-inverse)
done

```

```

lemma CompFunCarAudioSystem-the:
  the (CompFun CarAudioSystem "On") = {CDMode-CTRL, TunerMode-CTRL}
apply (unfold CarAudioSystem-def)
apply (subst AddSA-CompFun-the)
prefer 3
apply (subst AddSA-CompFun-the)
prefer 3
apply (subst AddSA-CompFun-the2)
apply (wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5)+
done

```

```

lemma CompFunCarAudioSystem-the2:
  the (CompFun CarAudioSystem "CarAudioSystem") = {AudioPlayer-CTRL,
  CDPlayer-CTRL}
apply (unfold CarAudioSystem-def)
apply (subst AddSA-CompFun-the3)
prefer 5
apply (subst AddSA-CompFun-the3)
prefer 5
apply (subst AddSA-CompFun-the)
prefer 3
apply (subst AddSA-CompFun-the)
prefer 3
apply (subst PseudoHA-CompFun-the)
apply (wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5)+
done

```

```

lemma CompFunCarAudioSystem-the3:
  the (CompFun CarAudioSystem "Off") = {}
apply (unfold CarAudioSystem-def)
apply (subst AddSA-CompFun-the3)
prefer 5
apply (subst AddSA-CompFun-the3)

```

**prefer** 5  
**apply** (*subst AddSA-CompFun-the2*)  
**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5*)+  
**done**

**schematic-goal** *CompFunCarAudioSystem-ran*:  
*ran (CompFun CarAudioSystem) = ?X*  
**apply** (*unfold CarAudioSystem-def*)  
**apply** (*rule AddSA-CompFun-ran3-IFF*)  
**prefer** 6  
**apply** (*subst AddSA-CompFun-PseudoHA-ran2*)  
**prefer** 4  
**apply** (*simp add: insert-commute*)  
**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5*)+  
**done**

**lemma** *Root-CTRL-CDPlayer-CTRL-noteq* [*simp*]:  
*Root-CTRL  $\neq$  CDPlayer-CTRL*  
**apply** (*rule SA-States-disjunct*)  
**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5*)+  
**done**

**lemma** *Root-CTRL-AudioPlayer-CTRL-noteq* [*simp*]:  
*Root-CTRL  $\neq$  AudioPlayer-CTRL*  
**apply** (*rule SA-States-disjunct*)  
**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5*)+  
**done**

**lemma** *Root-CTRL-TunerMode-CTRL-noteq* [*simp*]:  
*Root-CTRL  $\neq$  TunerMode-CTRL*  
**apply** (*rule SA-States-disjunct*)  
**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5*)+  
**done**

**lemma** *Root-CTRL-CDMode-CTRL-noteq* [*simp*]:  
*Root-CTRL  $\neq$  CDMode-CTRL*  
**apply** (*rule SA-States-disjunct*)  
**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5*)+  
**done**

**lemma** *CDPlayer-CTRL-AudioPlayer-CTRL-noteq* [*simp*]:  
*CDPlayer-CTRL  $\neq$  AudioPlayer-CTRL*  
**apply** (*rule SA-States-disjunct*)  
**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5*)+  
**done**

**lemma** *CDPlayer-CTRL-TunerMode-CTRL-noteq* [*simp*]:  
*CDPlayer-CTRL  $\neq$  TunerMode-CTRL*  
**apply** (*rule SA-States-disjunct*)

**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5*)+  
**done**

**lemma** *CDPlayer-CTRL-CDMode-CTRL-noteq* [*simp*]:  
    *CDPlayer-CTRL*  $\neq$  *CDMode-CTRL*  
**apply** (*rule SA-States-disjunct*)  
**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5*)+  
**done**

**lemma** *AudioPlayer-CTRL-TunerMode-CTRL-noteq* [*simp*]:  
    *AudioPlayer-CTRL*  $\neq$  *TunerMode-CTRL*  
**apply** (*rule SA-States-disjunct*)  
**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5*)+  
**done**

**lemma** *AudioPlayer-CTRL-CDMode-CTRL-noteq* [*simp*]:  
    *AudioPlayer-CTRL*  $\neq$  *CDMode-CTRL*  
**apply** (*rule SA-States-disjunct*)  
**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5*)+  
**done**

**lemma** *TunerMode-CTRL-CDMode-CTRL-noteq* [*simp*]:  
    *TunerMode-CTRL*  $\neq$  *CDMode-CTRL*  
**apply** (*rule SA-States-disjunct*)  
**apply** (*wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5*)+  
**done**

**schematic-goal** *Chi-CarAudioSystem*:  
    *Chi CarAudioSystem "CarAudioSystem" = ?X*  
**apply** (*unfold Chi-def*)  
**apply** (*rule trans*)  
**apply** (*simp add: SAsCarAudioSystem StatesCarAudioSystem restrict-def Comp-FunCarAudioSystem-the2*)  
**apply** (*rule trans*)  
**apply** (*simp add: not-sym*)  
**apply** (*simp add: CarAudioSystemStates insert-or*)  
**done**

**schematic-goal** *Chi-CarAudioSystem-On*:  
    *Chi CarAudioSystem "On" = ?X*  
**apply** (*unfold Chi-def*)  
**apply** (*rule trans*)  
**apply** (*simp add: SAsCarAudioSystem StatesCarAudioSystem restrict-def Comp-FunCarAudioSystem-the*)  
**apply** (*rule trans*)  
**apply** (*simp add: not-sym*)  
**apply** (*simp add: CarAudioSystemStates insert-or*)  
**done**

```

schematic-goal Chi-CarAudioSystem-Off:
  Chi CarAudioSystem "Off" = ?X
apply (unfold Chi-def)
apply (simp add: SAsCarAudioSystem StatesCarAudioSystem restrict-def Comp-
FunCarAudioSystem-the3)
done

```

```

schematic-goal InitConf-CarAudioSystem:
  InitConf CarAudioSystem = ?X
apply (unfold CarAudioSystem-def)
apply (rule AddSA-InitConf-IFF)+
apply simp
apply (wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5)
apply fast
apply (wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5)
apply simp
apply (simp add: CarAudioSystemthms-5)
apply (wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5)
apply fast
apply (wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5)
apply fast
apply simp
apply (wellformed CarAudioSystemthms-5)
apply fast
apply (simp add: CarAudioSystemthms-5)
done

```

```

lemma Initial-State-CarAudioSystem:
  CarAudioSystem |=H= Atom (IN "Off")
apply (simp add: InitConf-CarAudioSystem )
done

```

**end**

## References

- [HN96] D. Harel and D. Naamad. A STATEMATE semantics for state-charts. *ACM Transactions on Software Engineering and Methodology*, 5(4):293–333, Oct 1996.

- [MLS97] E. Mikk, Y. Lakhnech, and M. Siegel. Hierarchical automata as model for statecharts. In *Asian Computing Science Conference (ASIAN'97)*, Springer LNCS, **1345**, 1997.
- [HK01] S. Helke and F. Kammüller. Representing Hierarchical Automata in Interactive Theorem Provers. In R. J. Boulton, P. B. Jackson, editors, *Theorem Proving in Higher Order Logics, TPHOLs 2001*, Springer LNCS, **2152**, 2001.
- [HK05] S. Helke and F. Kammüller. Structure Preserving Data Abstractions for Statecharts. In F. Wang, editors, *Formal Techniques for Networked and Distributed Systems, FORTE 2005*, Springer LNCS, **3731**, 2005.
- [Hel07] S. Helke. *Verification of Statecharts using Structure- and Property-Preserving Data Abstraction [german]*. PhD thesis, Fakultät IV, Technische Universität Berlin, Germany, 2007.